DENZA

DENZA Z9 GT

OWNER'S MANUAL DM-i



Foreword

Thank you for choosing DENZA. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: DENZA Auto Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing DENZA. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION", and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Sustainability

As a new energy passenger vehicle, DENZA Z9GT is an environmentally friendly product. Please visit https://reach.bydeurope.com for environmental protection information about the vehicle.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Contact Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer service center.

E-mail: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

Call 00800-10203000 for roadside assistance or customer service (9:00–18:00, Monday–Saturday).

Copyright © BYD Auto Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....7

Dashboard..... 8

Doors.....9

Interior..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12

Seat Belt Overview..... 12

Using Seat Belts.....13

Airbags..... 15

Airbag Overview..... 15

Airbag Types..... 17

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....19

Child Restraint System.....22

Child Restraint System.....22

Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 27

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....27

Working Mode Selection of Dual-Mode System..... 28

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System..... 29

Anti-theft Alarm System.....31

Anti-theft Alarm System.....31

Data Collection and Processing..... 32

Data Collection and Processing.....32

Vehicle Data Processing..... 32

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode.....34

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 34

Your Data Protection Rights.....35

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 38

Instrument Cluster View.....38

Instrument Cluster Indicators.....39

Controller Operations

Doors and Keys.....52

Keys.....52

Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 57

Smart Access and Start System..... 64

Electronic Child Protection Lock..... 65

Seats.....66

Seat Precautions..... 66

Adjusting Front Seat with Power..... 67

Adjusting Rear Seat with Power.....69

Heating and Ventilation System..... 71

Memory System.....71

Steering Wheel..... 73

Steering Wheel Switches.....73

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....76

Rearview Mirrors..... 76

Side Mirrors.....76

Interior Rearview Mirrors..... 77

Wipers..... 78

Wiper Switches..... 78

Replacing Wiper Blades..... 79

Switches..... 80

Light Switches..... 80

Passengers' Window Switches.....81

Odometer Switch..... 81

Sunshade Switches..... 82

Interior Light Switches.....83

Driver's Door Switches..... 84

Emergency Call (E-Call).....85
Hazard Warning Light Switch.....86
Passenger Airbag Switch*..... 86

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging..... 90
Charging Instructions.....90
Charging.....94
Smart Charging..... 101
Charging Port Immobilizer System.....101
Discharging.....102
Driving Range Display..... 104
Target SOC Setting..... 104
Batteries..... 106
Batteries.....106
Usage Precautions..... 108
Break-in Period.....108
Trailer Towing.....109
Driving Safety Precautions.....110
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 110
Fuel..... 111
Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....113
Carrying Luggage..... 114
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....115
Wading into Water.....116
Fire Prevention.....117
Starting and Driving.....118
Starting the Vehicle..... 118
Driving.....120
Driving with Low Fuel Consumption.... 121
e^3..... 122
DiSus*.....133
Rear Wheel Steering System..... 136
Gear Shift Controls..... 136
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....137
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....140
Electric Rear Wing.....141
Driving Precautions.....142
Driver Assistance..... 145
Driver Assistance System..... 145
Driving Assist..... 151
Parking Assist..... 161
Forward Safety Assist.....174
Side Safety Assist.....186
Rear Safety Assist*.....195
Light Switches..... 199
Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS).....201
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*.....202
Head-up Display (HUD)..... 203
Tire Pressure Monitoring.....204
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS).....205
Driving Safety Systems.....206

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 212
Infotainment Touchscreen.....212
Infotainment System Home Screen..... 212
Gestures and Responses..... 213
Vehicle Settings on the infotainment touchscreen..... 213
Bluetooth Call.....213
OTA Update.....214
Calling DENZA Assistant.....215
Other apps:..... 215
My Car..... 215
Passenger Seat..... 216
Phone Projection.....217

A/C System..... 223
A/C Panel.....223
A/C Operation Interface..... 223
Vents..... 224
Function Definition..... 224
BYD App..... 227
About BYD App.....227
Account Registration..... 227
Vehicle Condition and Control.....227
Individual Center and Vehicle Management.....228
Storage..... 228
Front Trunk..... 228
Door Bins..... 228
Center Console Storage Compartment.....228
Glove Box..... 229
Seatback Pockets..... 229
Cup Holders..... 229
Other Devices..... 230
Sun Visor..... 230
Grab Handles..... 230
USB Ports..... 231
Auxiliary power.....231
Wireless Phone Charging..... 232
Microphone.....233
Double-sided opening armrest console.....233
Refrigerator.....234
Refrigerator Overview..... 234
Refrigerator Operation..... 234
Refrigerator Functions..... 235

Maintenance

Maintenance Information.....240
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....240
DiCare..... 245
Regular Maintenance..... 245
Regular Maintenance..... 245
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 246
Paint Maintenance Tips.....246
Vehicle Cleaning..... 247
Interior Cleaning.....249
Self-Maintenance.....250
Self-Maintenance..... 250
Vehicle Storage..... 252
Sunroof Maintenance.....252
Hood..... 253
Engine..... 253
Cooling System.....254
Braking System.....255
Windshield Washer.....255
A/C System.....256
Wiper Blades.....256
Tires..... 257
Fuses..... 260

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur..... 262
Reflective Vest..... 262
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....262
If a High Voltage Fault Occurs..... 262
If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on... 262
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving.....263
If the Engine is Overheated.....264
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....264
If a Tire Goes Flat.....266

Specifications

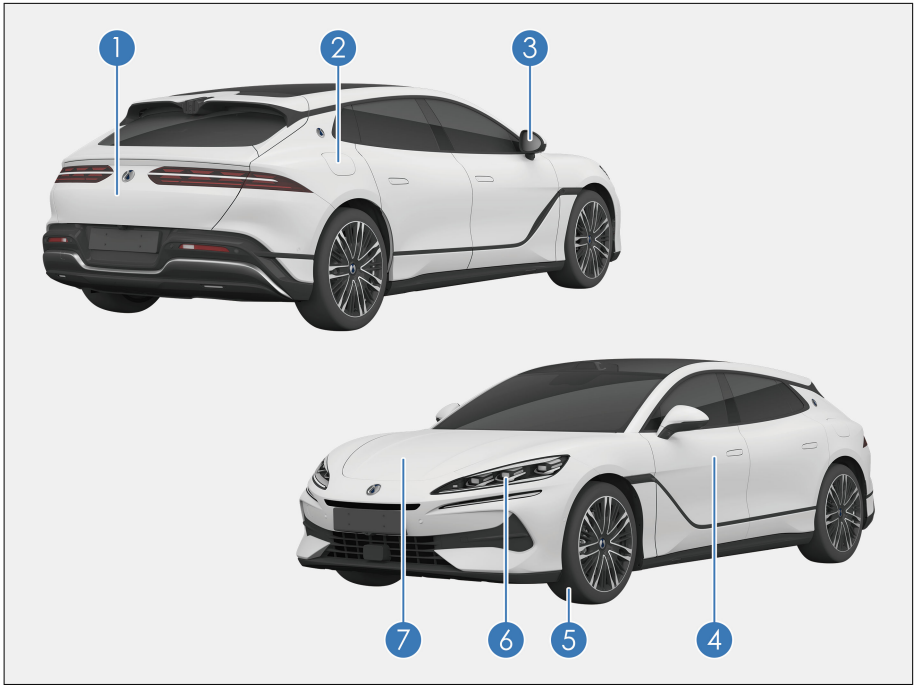
Vehicle Data..... 270
Specifications..... 270
Other Information..... 274
Vehicle Identification..... 274
Warning Labels..... 275
Declarations of Conformity..... 276
Declarations of Conformity.....276

Abbreviations

Abbreviations.....283

Illustration Index

Exterior



1 Trunk Lid ***P61***

2 Check before Charging ***P94***

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable* ***P94***

Using AC Charging Piles* ***P97***

Using DC Chargers* ***P98***

3 Power Side Mirrors ***P76***

4 Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key ***P59***

5 Tires ***P257***

If a Tire Goes Flat ***P266***

6 Light Switches ***P80***

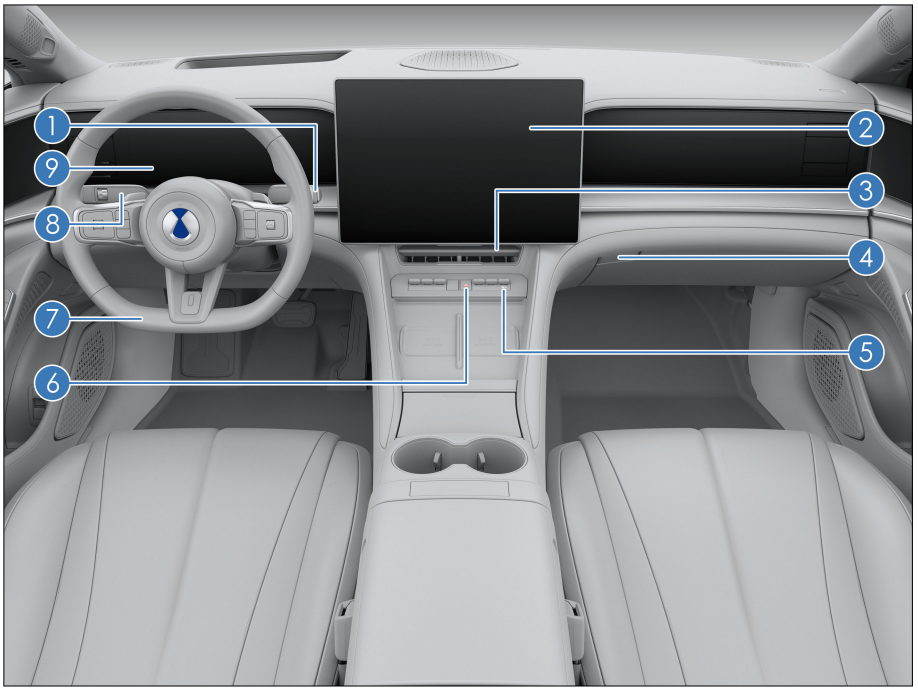
7 Hood ***P253***

Cooling System ***P254***

Braking System ***P255***

Washer ***P255***

Dashboard



1 Gear Shift Controls ***P136***

2 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P212***

3 Front Center Vent ***P224***

4 Glove Box ***P229***

5 Mode Switches ***P28***

6 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P86***

7 Steering Wheel Switches ***P73***

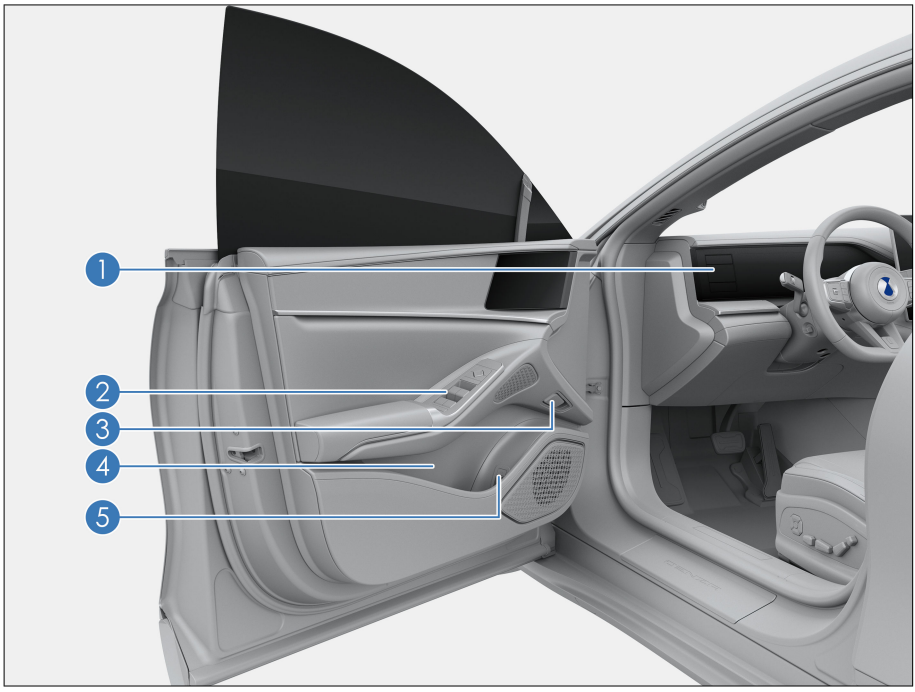
Adjusting the Steering Wheel ***P76***

8 Wiper Switch ***P78***

Light Switches ***P80***

9 Instrument Cluster ***P38***

Doors



1 Vents ***P224***

2 Power Window Switches ***P84***

Central Locking ***P85***

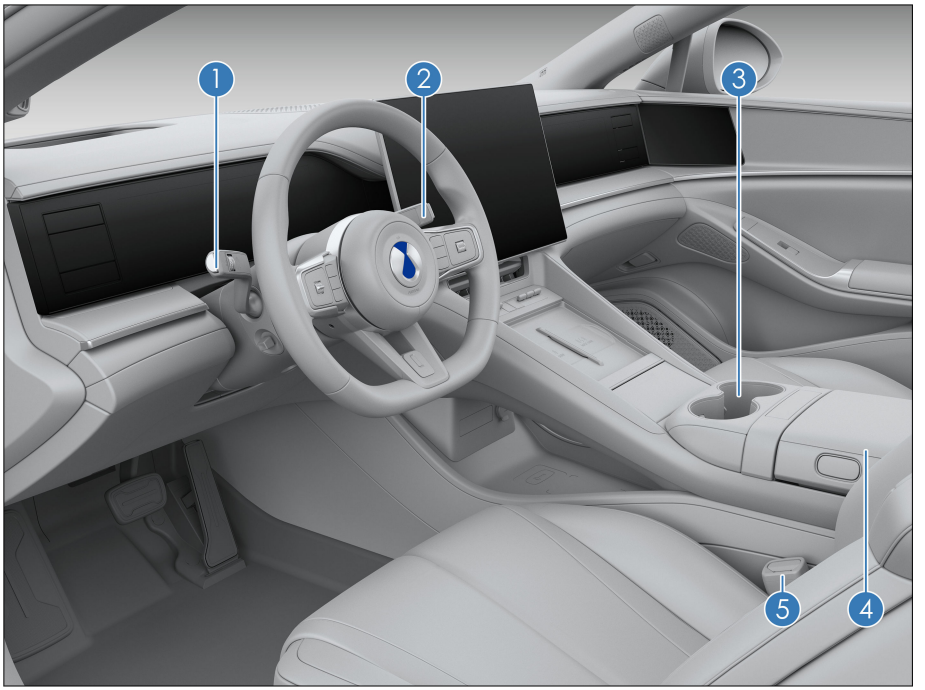
Side Mirror Switches ***P76***

3 Door Opening with Interior Door Handles ***P58***

4 Door Bins ***P228***

5 Locking/Unlocking the Hood ***P253***

Interior



1 Light Switches ***P80***

2 Gear Shift Controls ***P136***

3 Front Seat Cup Holder ***P229***

4 Refrigerator ***P234***

5 Seat Belts ***P12***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 15
Child Restraint System..... 22
Dual-Mode System Working Mode...27
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 31
Data Collection and Processing..... 32

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily to fit adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose a child restraint system appropriate for your child's age and size. (see ***P***).
- If any abnormality is found, it is recommended to contact the authorized dealer of DENZA immediately for confirmation and treatment. Before that, do not use the corresponding seat.

- DENZA has highly emphasized that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Similarly, do not allow children to sit on the lap, so that children can not be fully protected in case of emergency braking or collision.

Emergency Locking Retractor Function

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack in order to pull out the seat belt.

Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

Seat Belt Pretensioning by Motor*

Upon detecting a dangerous situation, the seat belt automatically retracts to effectively secure the driver and passengers. Once the danger is cleared, the seat belt automatically returns to a relaxed state.

Seat Belt Webbing Pre-tensioning

After the vehicle starts and the seat belt is fastened, the motor retracts the webbing to reduce potential excessive slack in the seat belt.

REMINDER

- Do not pull out the belt webbing forcibly during motor start-up, otherwise the motor will not disengage. If that happens, pull out the webbing with a greater force and insert the buckle for pretensioning.
- After the motor performs seat belt pretensioning, adjust the seat belt if it is too tight.

Pretensioner

In the event of emergency braking (such as emergency maneuvers, frontal collisions, rear-end collisions, or side impacts), the system activates the motor in advance to pre-tension the seat belt webbing, minimizing the risk of injury to occupants caused by collisions.

REMINDER

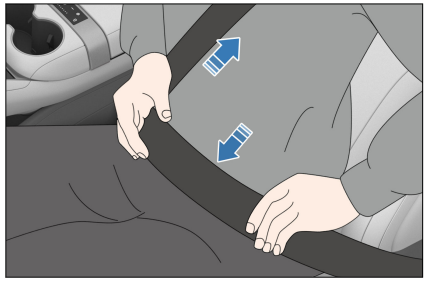
- If the seat belt cannot be released, move the seatback slightly backwards until the tension of the seat belt decreases and the locking mechanism unlocks.

Using Seat Belts

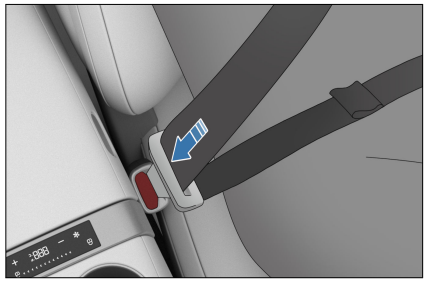
1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle as needed. (See ***P67***)

2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.
- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.



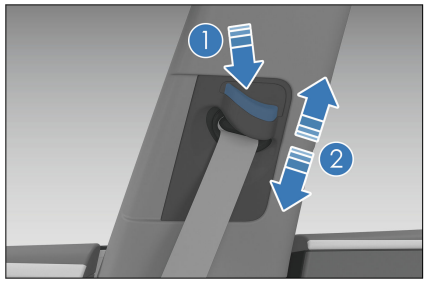
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

① Press the adjuster release button.

② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



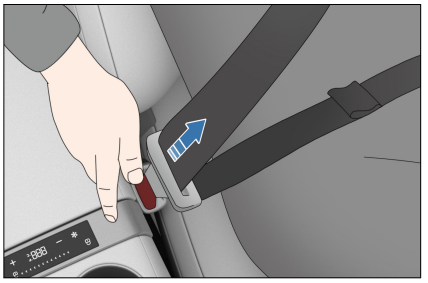
5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the centre of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not be liable to slip from the shoulder, otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The more upright the seat back, the better the protection.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door or rear seatback; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any abnormality is found, it is recommended to contact the authorized dealer of DENZA immediately for confirmation and treatment. Before that, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt,

WARNING

ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.

- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If the driver or the front passenger has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go on and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder main indicator

  Any unfastened seat belt will trigger corresponding indicator to light up and flash.

- Display of unfastened seat belt

  The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up on the instrument cluster, and is steady on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.

- Seat belt reminder for front passenger

  If the driver or the front passenger has not buckled up after the vehicle is powered on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up on the instrument cluster. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to alert the driver and the occupant.

- When the driver and the passengers fasten their seat belts, the seat belt reminder indicator turns off and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and conditions are met, airbags deploy rapidly, and along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants, reducing the likelihood of injuries or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision in which they are designed to deploy. The front airbags include a driver and a front passenger airbag. The side airbags include front seat side airbags, second-row seat side airbags, side curtain airbags, and a far-side airbag.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system is not a replacement for seat belts and must be used

in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- Non-genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury. Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a collision, even if the airbag module did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for airbag testing.

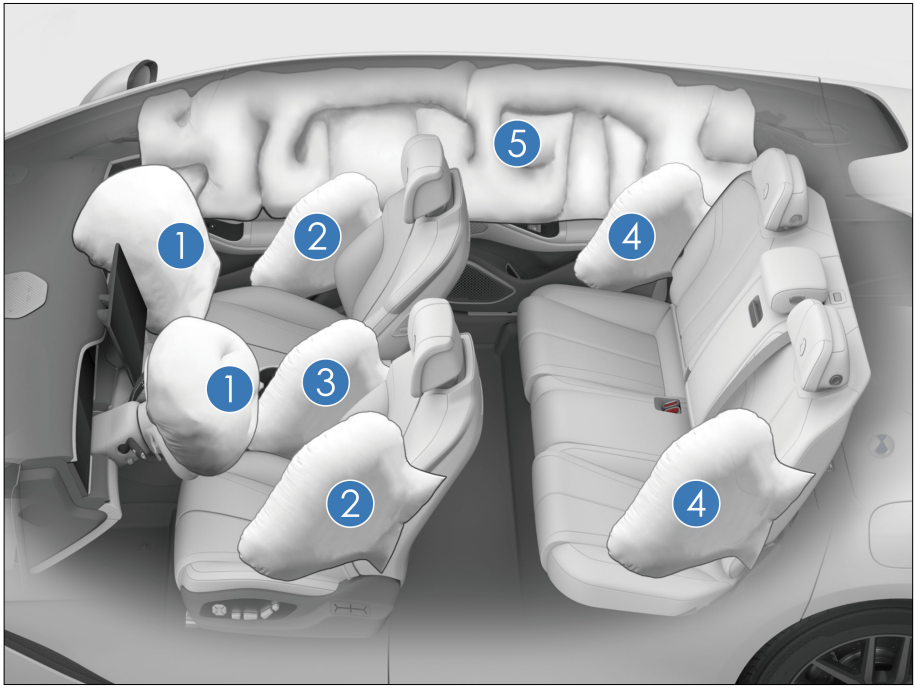
 Airbag warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by the warning light on the instrument cluster.
- With the ignition on, if the airbag warning light stays on for about five seconds and then disappears, the system is running smoothly.

WARNING

- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, head to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Otherwise, airbags may not work properly.
- In case of water ingress (such as wet carpet or vehicle submersion) or vehicle damage from water, do not switch the ignition on and make sure to have the low-voltage battery disconnected. Failure to do so risks serious injury or death due to airbag deployment.

Airbag Types



① Driver and front passenger airbags

②④ Seat side airbags

③ Far side airbag

⑤ Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to

further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.

- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury but may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Far Side Airbag*

The front far side airbag is mounted on the inner side of the driver's seatback and marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the far side airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

WARNING

- Moisture may impair far side airbag operation. Do not wet the seatback.
- Do not cover or replace the seatback covers by yourself. Using unsuitable or non-genuine seatback covers may interfere with far side airbag deployment.

WARNING

- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimum protection from the far side airbag, the occupant must be buckled up and sit in an upright position.

Seat Side Airbags

The side airbags are mounted on the outside of seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected with the ignition on and the triggering conditions are met, the side airbag deploys to protect the occupant's chest.

WARNING

- Do not allow the seatback to become wet, as moisture may impair the proper operation of the side airbags.
- Do not cover or replace the seatback covers by yourself. Using unsuitable or non-genuine seatback covers may interfere with side airbag deployment.
- When a side impact meets the system's deployment conditions, the side airbag on the impacted side will deploy.
- For optimum side airbag protection, the occupant must be buckled up and sit in an upright position.

Side Curtain Airbags

The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junctions of the side wall and the ceiling, marked with

"AIRBAG" on the B and C pillars. When a moderate to severe impact is detected with the ignition on and the triggering conditions are met, the curtain airbags deploy to protect the heads of all vehicle occupants.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must be buckled up and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

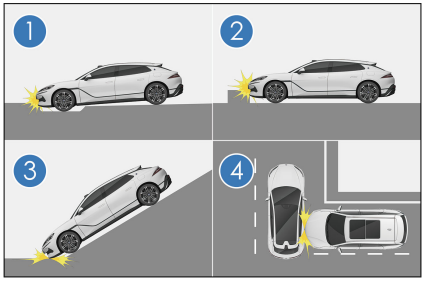
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



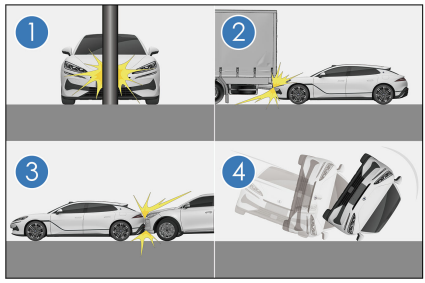
Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

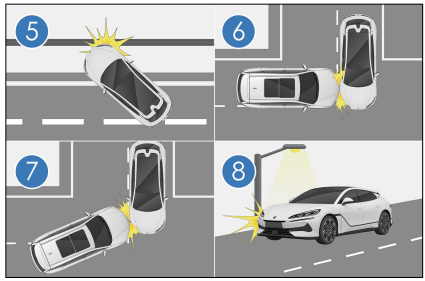


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system

WARNING

on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.

- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright while the vehicle is in motion. Airbag deployment heightens the risks of injury for unbelted occupants and those who are leaning forward or sitting improperly.
- Do not paste stickers, cover, or decorate the button area or the center cap of the steering wheel, the surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of side airbags. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- Children are not to be seated unprotected, nor are they to ride sitting on an adult's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of

WARNING

vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion, because doing so may result in serious injuries or even death.

- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of curtain airbags, including the windshield, window glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim, and auxiliary handles. These accessories or items may be thrown by the impact force from airbag deployment or impede airbag deployment, resulting in serious injury or death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation

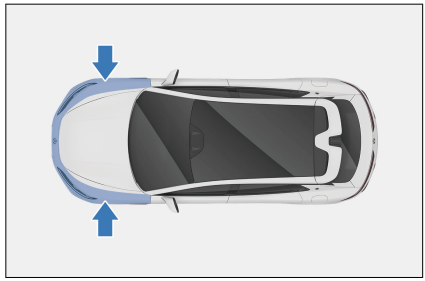
WARNING

done to the airbags be performed by a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

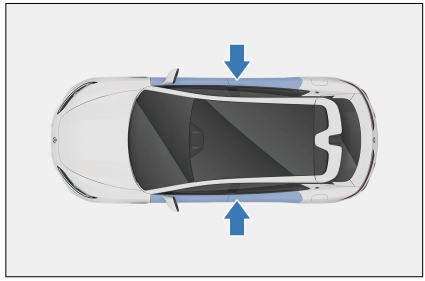
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

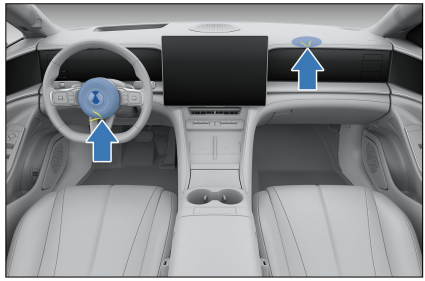
- Any airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- There is a collision with the doors of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.

Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System

Child restraint systems provide effective protection to children in an accident. For child safety, carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

WARNING

- Never carry a child on your lap in a vehicle journey.
- Appropriate child restraint systems must be used for children.
- Please follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual to make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.
- Failure to follow the instruction provided with the child restraint and in this manual may cause injuries and even death to your child in an accident.

Child passengers must be secured in suitable child restraints in a comfortable and safe way. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the seating position.
- The child restraint system must be homologated by ECE R44/ECE R129.

Passenger airbag cut-off switch

- Passenger airbag cut-off switch is located on the infotainment touchscreen.
- See ***P86*** for details.

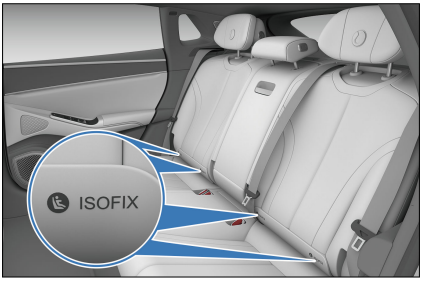
WARNING

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

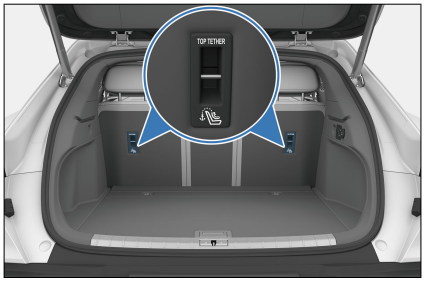
Child Restraint System Anchorages

The vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages and top tether anchorages for child restraint systems.

- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages, located below the anchorage markings (see illustration) on the seatback.



- The outboard rear seats are equipped with top tether anchorages on the back.

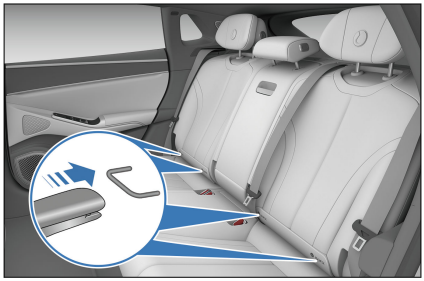


REMINDER

- The ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

1. Check the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage point and install the child restraint on the seat.



WARNING

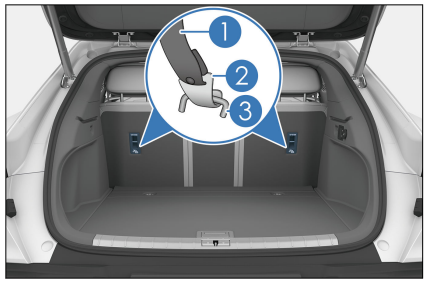
- When using the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency braking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

2. When installing a child restraint system with a top tether on an outboard rear seat, route the top tether around the outer side of the head support post, and then tighten and secure the snap hook to the corresponding anchorage.

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support



- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seats, front seats can be adjusted forward to ensure that the child is not in contact with the front seats. Meanwhile, the front seatback angle can also be adjusted to get more space.
- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can stably support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is not equipped with the backrest, never remove the head support of the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to the locking position.
- When the child restraint to be installed on a rear outboard seat has top tether straps, remove the cargo cover to access the top tether anchorage. Store the cover safely in your vehicle.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

Seat belt, ISOFIX, or i-Size child restraint installing options in the vehicle:

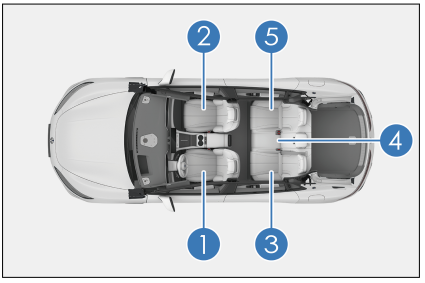
① Driver seat

② Front passenger seat

③ Rear left seat

④ Rear center seat

⑤ Rear right seat



Type	Seating Position					
	1	2		3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]
		Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a]			
Seating position suitable for universal belt (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Type	Seating Position					
	1	2		3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]
		Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a]			
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	×	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	×	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	×	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3 Belt only	B2/B3

[a] If necessary, adjust the seat height and seatback angle of the front passenger seat to securely install the child restraint system.

Type	Seating Position					
	1	2		3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]
		Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a]			

[b] If necessary, adjust the height of the rear seat head support or remove it to avoid interference with the child restraint system. Do not remove the head support when using a booster cushion without a backrest. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

×: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this group.

- Recommended child restraint systems:

Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Installing method
40–83	Maxi-Cosi	Pebble 360	Belted
76–105	Britax Römer	Trifix 2 i-Size	ISOFIX and belted
100–150	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size [a]	ISOFIX and belt
137–150	Graco	Booster Max R129	Belt

[a]: For better protection, SecureGuard and XP-PAD are recommended.

Recommended child restraint systems for different height groups are shown in the illustration:

① 40–83 cm

② 76–105 cm

③ 100–150 cm

④ 137–150 cm

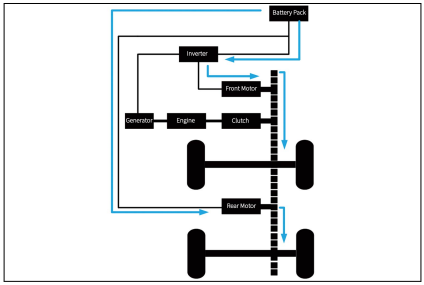


Dual-Mode System Working Mode

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode

EV—Pure Electric Mode

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery provides electricity to the motor to drive the vehicle in a variety of working conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

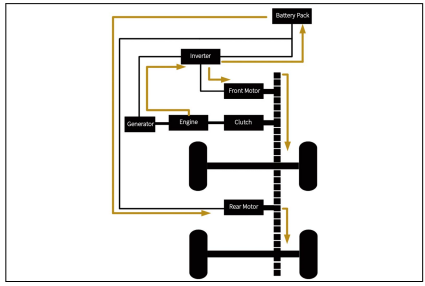


REMINDER

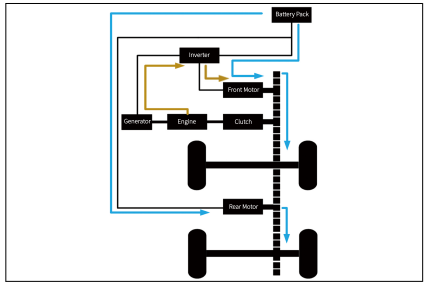
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or too low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are met. It is suggested to use HEV mode when high-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.

HEV—Dual mode

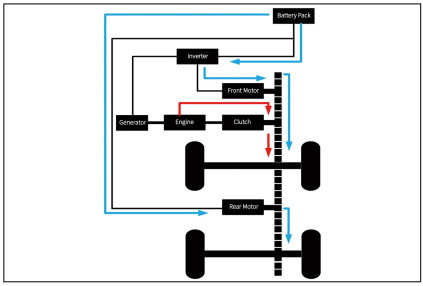
- In HEV mode, the vehicle will be driven by pure electricity for priority when the engine does not start when the battery is high or the power is low. As shown in the pure electric operation mode illustration.
- In HEV mode, the engine starts to enter the series mode to meet the power performance demand when the battery is low or the power is high.
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity for battery charging and motor working.



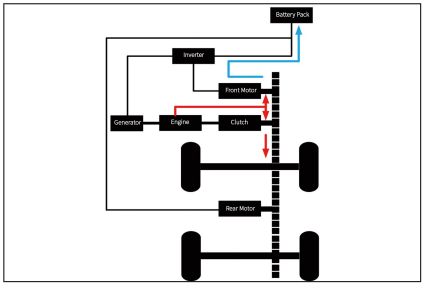
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity and the battery discharges for drive motor working.



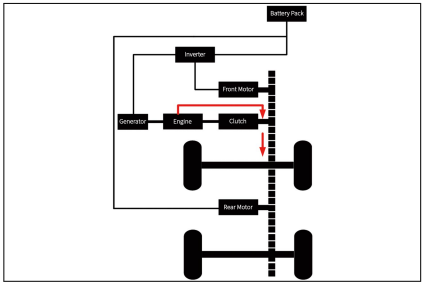
- In HEV mode, the engine starts in parallel mode under some working conditions to improve fuel economy at medium and high speeds.
  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor generates electricity for energy recycling.



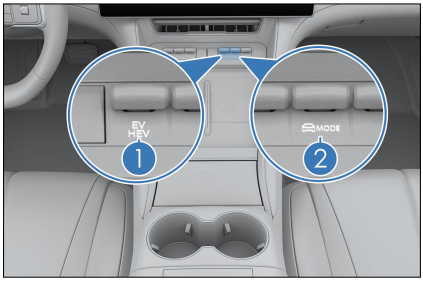
- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



Working Mode Selection of Dual-Mode System

① "EV/HEV" button

② Mode



EV-ECO mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

EV-NORMAL mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "NORMAL" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and power consumption.

EV-SPORT mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to ensure better dynamic performance.

HEV-ECO mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the

"MODE" button continuously until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to provide the best fuel economy.

HEV-NORMAL mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "NORMAL" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

HEV-SPORT mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "SPORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamics.

SNOW mode

- Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SNOW indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SNOW mode. This mode is suitable for slippery roads like snow.

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System

The vehicle operates under the combination of fuel and electricity. Pay special attention to the followings:

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is low, the vehicle will limit the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - It is recommended to use vehicles in an environment above -20 °C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.
- The best operating temperature of the battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery limits the output power and shortens the purely electric mileage.

Pay attention to high-voltage and high-temperature components

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch the orange cable or the high-voltage battery electrode. Electric shock may cause serious injury or even be life-threatening.
- Please read all warning labels.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving. These parts are attached with warning labels. Please carefully read and follow the instructions on these warning labels.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.

WARNING

- In case of collision, wading and other situations that may cause damage to the high-pressure system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious or even life-threatening injuries.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and motor, the engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged and the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. If the hand-held shift lever is placed in the "N", "R" or "D" gear for too long, it will falsely report that the gear is stuck. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure to release the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, press the "P" button, take away the key and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even the 12V external power supply cannot be used for jump starts, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to press the "P" button, because when the "OK" indicator lights up but the engine stops, the vehicle can idle at a low speed (the motor can drive).
- When the "OK" indicator light is on, the vehicle will travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal if the shift lever is placed in the "R" or "D" gear, so please pay attention.

- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for the following situations:
  - Vehicle repair or maintenance is required.
  - If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons.
  - The vehicle is being handled because of the use of a sealed hybrid low-voltage battery.

WARNING

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.

WARNING

- Depress the brake pedal, press the "P" button, and check that the gear is successfully switched and EPB is engaged.
- Stop the dual-mode system.

- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are uninsulated wires inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.
- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please select the four-wheel off-ground towing. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. The anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after eight seconds when all doors are locked.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm* with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, trunk, or hood is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or the trunk with a valid smart key/App.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Opening the trunk remotely with a valid smart key/App.
  - Using a valid NFC key to unlock the door.
  - Starting the vehicle with a valid smart key
  - Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key
  - Turn on the A/C with a valid phone app.

WARNING

- Do not modify the anti-theft alarm system by means of alteration or addition, otherwise the system may fail. If a fault occurs, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Data Collection and Processing

- We highly value the protection of your privacy and personal data, and handle your data in accordance with applicable data protection laws.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please read the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment touchscreen (→ **System** → **System** → **Legal Information**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tire pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
- The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
- The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. DENZA discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (concerning speed, battery level, and the braking system) or environment data (including distance sensors and temperature) are collected and processed.

- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to DENZA engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to DENZA data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- DENZA has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or DENZA services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.

- DENZA is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings such as obstacles.
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see section "Around View Monitor" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you are purchasing a second-hand vehicle or receiving a vehicle transferred from a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.
- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the DENZA data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  to turn Wi-Fi off.
- You can also disable Wi-Fi in On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  →**System**→**Link** to turn wireless network off.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- DENZA discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (for example, data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, DENZA may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities

in your country or region, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- DENZA has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system.

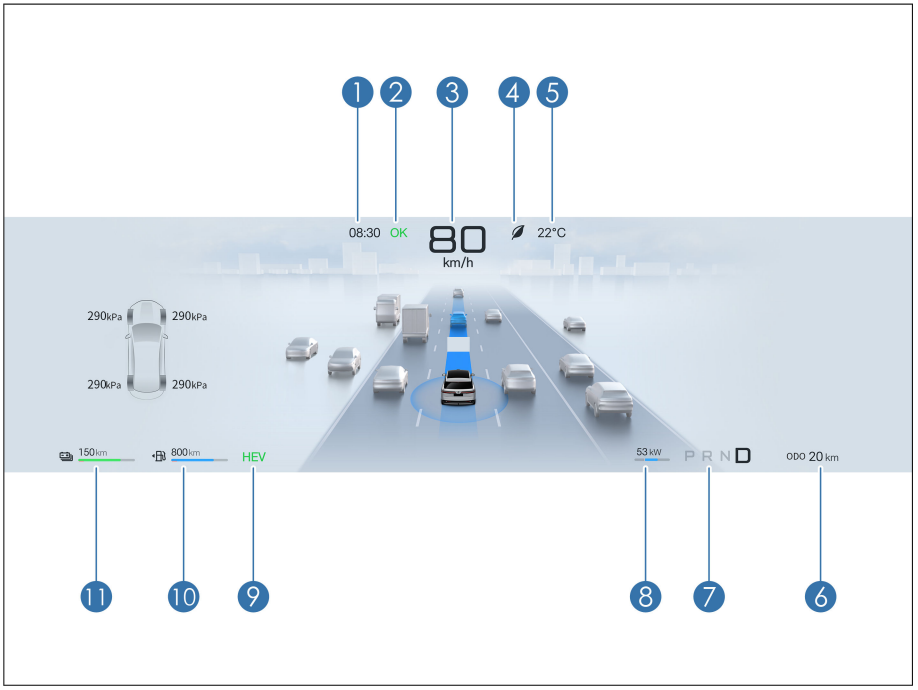
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....38

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

LCD Instrument Cluster



1 Time
2 OK indicator
3 Speedometer
4 Driving mode
5 Outside temperature
6 Total mileage
7 Gear status
8 Power meter
9 Power mode
10 Fuel gauge
11 State of charge (SOC)

Instrument cluster view in simple mode



REMINDER

- For safe driving, the instrument cluster may switch to simple mode during occasional communication delays in the instrument cluster system. In this mode, the instrument cluster continues to display driving-related information normally without affecting normal vehicle travel. After the system becomes normal, the instrument cluster may automatically exit the simple mode. If it does not, try the following actions to switch back to normal mode:
  1. Press and hold both the scroll button and the right arrow button on the steering wheel, or press and hold the START/STOP button, to restart the instrument cluster.
  2. While vehicle safety is ensured, operate the vehicle power switch to turn off the vehicle and then turn the ignition on.

REMINDER

- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators and Warning Lights

Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator	
Discharge indicator		OK indicator	

MEB	MEB indicator*		GPF regeneration indicator*
EV	EV indicator		HDC indicator
	DMS active indicator	HEV	HEV indicator
	Low beam indicator		AVH indicator
	Sport mode indicator		Normal mode indicator
	Suspension height indicator		Economy mode indicator
	High beam indicator		Lane support system indicator*
	AFL indicator*		ACC status indicator*
EV	Forced EV indicator		Regular cruise control main indicator*
	AVH standby indicator		BSD indicator*
	ICC indicator*		AEB indicator (blue)*
	HNOA and CNOA indicator		AEB fault warning light*
	Oil life monitoring*		Smart key warning light

	Tire pressure fault warning light		Main alarm indicator
	ESC OFF warning light		ESC fault warning light
	Low fuel warning light		Emission fault
	ABS fault warning light		Driving power limit warning
	Headlight fault warning light		GPF regeneration fault warning light*
	BSD fault warning light*		Lane support system fault warning light*
	Driver monitoring system warning*		High-voltage battery low SOC warning light
	AVAS OFF indicator	MEB	MEB fault Indicator *
	TSR indicator*		AEB warning light (red)*
	Seat belt reminder indicator		Airbag fault warning light
	EPB indicator		Parking brake system fault warning light
	Steering system fault warning light		Coolant temperature warning
	Low oil pressure warning light		High-voltage battery charging connection indicator

	Low-voltage power system fault warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light
	High-voltage battery warning		Powertrain fault warning light
	Motor overheating warning light*		

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the data network of the vehicle.	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine attachment are faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the memory system*	The memory system is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	EV function limited	The EV function is limited. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately for a check.
	Check the headlamp system	The headlight is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer.
	Please check the PCW system*.	The PCW system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

	AEB system is limited*	The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Check the BSD system*	The BSD system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	BSD is limited*	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the multi-purpose camera*	The multi-purpose camera is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Multi-purpose camera function limited*	The function of the multi-purpose camera is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Intelligent-camera is not available due to poor condition*	The intelligent camera is not available. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Solenoid valve is being cleaned. Please wait.	The solenoid valve is cleaning, park and wait. If the malfunction exists for a long time, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the LDA system*	The lane departure assist system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the LKS*	The lane keeping system (LKS) is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	LKS limited*	The LKS function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check HDC system	The HDC system is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

	IMU not calibrated*	The active suspension system has not been calibrated, which may affect driving comfort. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Clutch temperature is high, pull over for cooling.	The clutch temperature is too high, pull over and allow it to cool down. If the condition persists for an extended period, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Indicator/Warning Light Description

 Emission fault indicator

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- If this warning light lights up when the vehicle is not in self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, and power it on again. Start the engine and look for this warning light. If the warning light is still on, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, drive cautiously and avoid fully pressing on the accelerator or driving at high speeds.
- If the fault warning light lights up frequently, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

CAUTION

- Continuous driving after the emission system fault warning light turns on may damage the emission control system and the engine.

 Low fuel warning light

- If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver to refuel the vehicle as soon as possible.
- When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel warning light may illuminate earlier than usual.

 Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.



ABS fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on for self-check. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light turns on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the ABS system fails, but the braking system continues to operate normally.
- When the ABS fault warning light turns on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the ABS system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- The ABS has a self-check function. If a malfunction occurs, the ABS fault warning light turns on, indicating an ABS failure. In this case, the brake system will still provide normal braking capability as in a conventional vehicle without ABS. However, under strong braking, the front or rear wheels may lock up, which could result in loss of steering control or skidding. If this occurs, especially in rainy or snowy conditions, avoid pressing the brake pedal forcefully to prevent loss of vehicle control. It is recommended to contact an authorized BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If the ABS warning light and the parking system warning light illuminate simultaneously, and the electronic parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the brake force distribution system between the front and rear wheels has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal deeper to slow the vehicle, and the braking distance becomes longer. Decelerate the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.

- If you have to drive a short distance under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.



Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the TPMS warning light comes on or flashes, message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure reading is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at this location may be interfered or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the warning light is solid on and one or more tire pressure readings turn yellow, the corresponding tire(s) are underinflated. When the temperature readings of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tires are too hot.

In any of the above cases, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



ACC fault indicator

- When the light is steady on, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in time.



ESC warning light

- This warning light turns on after the vehicle is started. If ESC functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is fixed.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed) after the vehicle is started and powered on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC fault warning light remains on while the fault warning lights for the ABS and

REMINDER

the parking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.



ESC OFF warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then goes off.
- When the "ESC OFF" switch is turned on, the light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system returns to normal.

REMINDER

- If the ESC OFF warning light is on, stay alert and maintain a slow driving speed in sharp turns and when avoiding obstacles. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of ESC system.



Driving power limit warning light

- When the power of the vehicle is limited, this indicator will light up, and it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in time.



Seat belt reminder indicator

- This warning light reminds the driver and the passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if anyone of teh driver, the front passenger or the second-row passenger doesn't fasten a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on and then off after a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by this warning light system. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on or flashes during driving.



Parking system fault warning light

In any of the following cases, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

This warning light lights up in the following conditions:

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.

- When the engine is running, this indicator is solid on if the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- Fault warning lights for the parking brake system and ABS come on simultaneously. In this case, the parking brake system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Therefore, the ABS does not function during braking, and the vehicle is unstable. Please drive with caution.
- If this warning light lights up briefly during operation, it does not indicate a problem.

CAUTION

In any of the following cases, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the engine is running and the light is still on, the brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. Firmly depress the brake pedal to initiate an emergency stop.
- The brake system fault warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.



Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- You may hear a hum coming from the running motor when turning the steering wheel, which does not indicate a fault.
- Do not turn the steering wheel at full lock for more than five seconds, otherwise the temperature protection will activate, causing heavy steering or system damage.
- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency, or power off the vehicle and turn off the engine. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact

WARNING

a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

 Coolant overheating warning light

- When the power gear is "ON", this light is on, indicating that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to stop the vehicle for cooling. In harsh conditions, like hot season and long periods of hill climbing and high speed driving, the engine may overheat.

 Low oil pressure warning light

- This light is about warning of low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, drive off the road, park the vehicle in a safe place, and shut down the engine immediately. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light goes on in case of very low oil level.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.

 Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system, DC system, or low-voltage power system. The engine can continue igniting until the battery runs out. In this case, turn off the A/C, fan, and the infotainment touchscreen, and drive the vehicle to the nearest DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance as soon as possible.

 Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by this warning light system. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. It is recommended to drive to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.

 High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the

vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.

 High-voltage battery warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by this warning light system. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.



TSR indicator

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

 Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) regeneration indicator

- When the GPF carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches a certain amount, the GPF will actively regenerate and the GPF indicator is solid green. At this time, try to drive on the highway as much as road conditions allow, and when the particulate matter is cleared, the GPF indicator turns off automatically.

 GPF regeneration fault warning light*

- When the GPF carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches its maximum, fuel consumption increases, power performance decreases, and the GPF indicator is solid yellow. At this time, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATIONS

Doors and Keys.....52
Seats.....66
Steering Wheel.....73
Rearview Mirrors.....76
Wipers..... 78
Switches.....80

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with different types of keys, including the electronic smart key, mechanical key, Bluetooth digital key, NFC digital key, and UWB digital key.

Smart Key

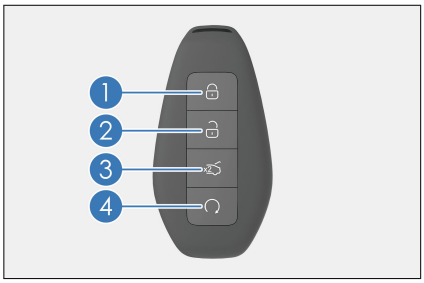
Press the microswitch on the front door handle, while carrying the correct smart key, to unlock or lock all doors. When the vehicle is locked, press the microswitch on the rear door handle, while carrying the correct smart key, to unlock the vehicle. Press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, open/close the trunk, start/stop the vehicle remotely.

① Lock button

② Unlock button

③ Trunk release button

④ START/STOP button



WARNING

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.

WARNING

- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. For details, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the

CAUTION

normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:

- Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.

- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch to other transmitting detection antennas.
- The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must endure the interference of various radio services or the radiation interference of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.

CAUTION

- Do not use it near airplanes or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical key

Use the mechanical key to lock or unlock the left front door. Handle it with care when it is not in use.

Bluetooth Digital Key*

Bluetooth digital key*

The DENZA Bluetooth digital key allows you to lock, unlock, or perform other control functions on the vehicle via a short-range phone Bluetooth connection.

- Download from the app store the latest version of the BYD app, which integrates the DENZA Bluetooth digital key functionality.

- For vehicles equipped with the Bluetooth digital key, the Bluetooth key function will be automatically activated once the remote service is enabled. Bluetooth digital key account, device authorization and management are consistent with remote services.
- After turning on the Bluetooth in the app, it will be connected automatically when you are close to the vehicle, or you can connect the Bluetooth manually. Bluetooth digital key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. Use the Bluetooth key to unlock or lock the doors, open or close the trunk, flash the lights, flash the lights and sound the horn, or close the windows only when the vehicle is turned off. Choose items need to be performed, and issue commands to control them. After unlocking the vehicle with a Bluetooth digital key, you will have one keyless start permission within a certain period of time and can press the START button to start and drive the vehicle; The permission is useless after timeout or other operations, and can be regained after Bluetooth digital key unlocking.

REMINDER

- Before activating the Bluetooth digital key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- When using the Bluetooth digital key for the first time, you need to set or verify the login password.
- The number of Bluetooth digital key-authorized devices is consistent with the remote service, and all are uniformly managed by the vehicle owner under "Authorized Device Management."
- Before adding or deleting a Bluetooth key device, or modifying account information, ensure that the vehicle has a stable network signal.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the Bluetooth connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Vehicles started remotely support only one Bluetooth unlock per start. Multiple locks are allowed before the unlock.
- Limited by the vehicle environment, the effective distance of the Bluetooth digital key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- There are a few mobile phones that are not compatible with Bluetooth digital keys.

NFC & UWB Digital Key

Introduction to NFC & UWB digital key

- The NFC & UWB Digital Key is a feature provided via the BYD App that allows users to register a smartphone or wearable device as a vehicle key, enabling door locking/unlocking and vehicle start functions.
- You can register a compatible smartphone or wearable device as a vehicle key by following the NFC &

UWB digital key setup process. Once added, the device can be used as a vehicle key.

- Before adding an NFC & UWB Digital Key, ensure the following conditions are met:
  - The wearable device and its paired smartphone are supported.
  - The system versions of the smartphone/wearable device are supported.
  - NFC is enabled on the smartphone/wearable device.
  - For iPhone and wearables, Bluetooth and location services are enabled.
  - For Android devices, the default application for NFC settings is Wallet App.
  - The Android Wallet account or Apple ID is logged in.
  - The BYD App account is logged in and vehicle owner authentication is completed.
  - The smartphone and vehicle have a stable network connection.

Entry for adding NFC & UWB digital key

- For vehicles equipped with NFC & UWB digital key function: after activating and logging into the App, go to the NFC & UWB key management page and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the adding.
- Access paths to key management page:
  - Tap the NFC & UWB icon on the homepage.
  - Go to **My Vehicle** → **NFC & UWB** to enter the key management page.

Using NFC & UWB Digital Key*

- Before use, ensure the following conditions are met:
  - The smartphone/wearable device has been successfully added as an NFC key.
  - NFC is enabled on the smartphone/wearable device.
  - For iPhone and wearables, Bluetooth and location services are enabled.
  - For Android phones, the vehicle key is set as the default card in the Wallet. For iPhone devices, vehicle key is enabled in Shortcuts.
  - Some models only support this function when the vehicle is powered off (refer to actual vehicle configuration).
- UWB digital key supports automatic door unlocking when the user approaches the vehicle, door locking/unlocking via microswitch, and quick start of the vehicle.
  - When the user approaches the vehicle with the UWB digital key, the doors will unlock automatically.
  - If the user remains near the vehicle for a certain period, the door needs to be unlocked via the microswitch, or by moving away and approaching again.
  - When exiting the vehicle with the UWB digital key, press the microswitch to lock the doors.
  - After entering the vehicle with the UWB digital key, press the brake pedal and the Start/Stop button to start the vehicle.

REMINDER

- Due to device manufacturer security policies, the smartphone or wearable device may be locked. In this case, the screen unlock password must be entered before

REMINDER

continuing to use the UWB digital key.

- Users can disable the UWB digital key function by turning off Comfort Access in the Wallet settings.

- NFC digital key supports unlocking/locking and starting the vehicle by tapping.
  - For authorized smartphones*, place the top rear of the phone close to the NFC sensing area on the exterior rearview mirror to lock/unlock the doors.

Sharing NFC digital key*

- Android devices sharing is completed via BYD App account authorization. Follow the instructions under Authorization Management to grant access. Once authorized, the recipient has the same permissions as the owner key by default.
- iPhone devices sharing is completed via Apple Wallet. Share the vehicle key card via iMessage to the recipient's Apple ID. The owner can set access permissions. The permissions can be authorized up to 4 users, and each authorized user can add one smartphone and one wearable device.

REMINDER

- Sharing between iOS and Android devices is currently not supported.
- If the owner key is deleted after sharing, activated shared keys remain usable, but unactivated shared keys cannot be activated.

Sharing Wearable NFC Key*

- Before adding a wearable NFC key, confirm whether the following conditions are met:
  - The wearable device and paired smartphone are supported.
  - Apple Watch is paired with a supported iPhone via the Watch App.
  - Bluetooth is enabled on both devices and remains stable during setup.
  - The smartphone has already been added as an owner key or shared key.
  - The smartphone and vehicle have a stable network connection.
- Apple Watch users should follow the instructions in the Watch App on the paired iPhone to add the watch as a vehicle key. Each vehicle supports up to 8 Apple Watch keys.

Replacing smartphone NFC key*

- This function is only available for iPhone devices. Log in to the BYD App and go to the owner key page to replace the smartphone (replace NFC owner key). After replacement, a new NFC owner key will be generated and the original NFC owner key will be removed and can no longer be used.
- This can also be done via the infotainment system settings.

Viewing and Removing NFC Key*

- Log in to the BYD App and go to the owner key page to view NFC key status and associated information, or remove NFC keys (removed keys can no longer be used).
- You can also manage keys via the mobile Wallet App or infotainment system settings (refer to relevant instructions).

REMINDER

- If your wearable device is lost, log in to the BYD App immediately and delete the corresponding vehicle key.

NFC Key Card*

- The NFC smart card is a key configured for the vehicle based on the near field communication method. Use the NFC smart card to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Place the NFC key at the mark on the left side mirror to unlock/lock all the doors.

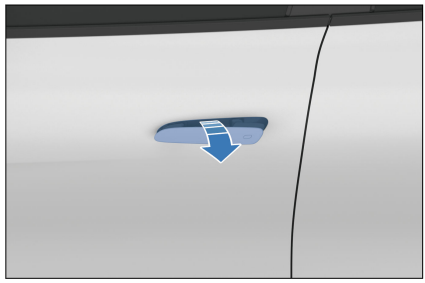
CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the charging area when the wireless charger is on (see ***P232*** for details).
  - Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that may cut off electromagnetic waves.
  - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not bend the card with force.
  - Do not place the card with other hard objects.
- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 2 cm. Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1–2 seconds.
- It is recommended to carry the NFC card at all times to avoid situations where you may be unable to use the vehicle due to loss or malfunction of your phone or smart key.
- In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle the NFC key card with care. If it is lost, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately for blocking of the lost card and re-configuration.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with the Mechanical Key

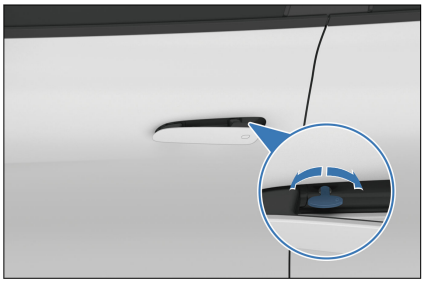
1. Push the left side of a hidden door handle, and turn the right side to get a finger height, holding it by a hand.
2. Once the right side is extended, pull the middle of the handle outward to extend the handle.



3. Insert the key into the lock hole and turn it.

- To unlock the driver's door: turn the key clockwise.

- To lock the driver's door: turn the key counterclockwise.



CAUTION

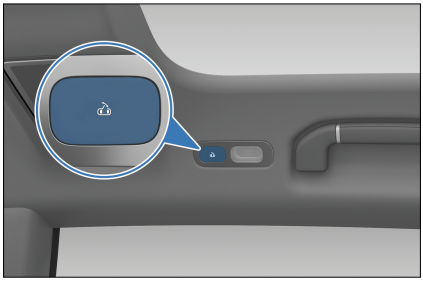
- After turning the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

CAUTION

- As this vehicle is equipped with electronic child protection locks, the rear doors can only be opened by pressing the interior door control buttons when the child protection locks are disabled.

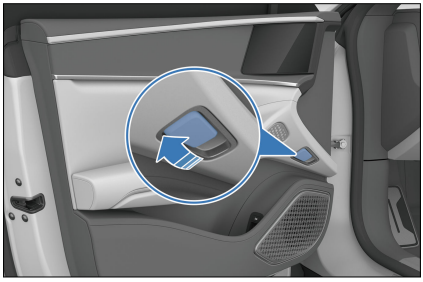
Opening with Door Control Button

- The door control button is located on the ceiling.
- When the door is closed, pressing the button automatically opens the door. During the opening process, pressing the button again adjusts the door's opening angle.
- When the door is open and stationary, pressing the button automatically closes the door.



Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.
- The interior door handle is mechanically linked to the door latch and remains operational even when the vehicle is powered off.
- As this vehicle is equipped with child protection locks, the rear doors can only be opened with

WARNING

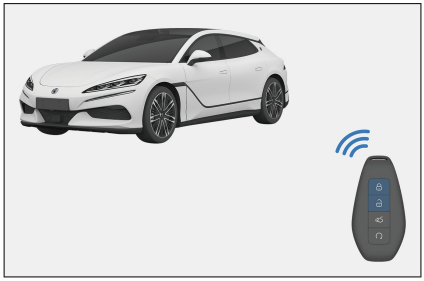
the interior handle when the child protection locks are disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- When you enter the active area while carrying a registered smart key, press the button on the smart key slowly and firmly to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When the ignition is switched off and all the doors and the hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. All door handles fold automatically, and the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.



- If any door is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash, the door handles do not fold and the alarm sounds once.
- If the hood or trunk is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash, and the alarm sounds once.
- If the hood, trunk or door is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash, and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button. All doors are unlocked, the hidden door handles automatically extend, and the turn signal flashes twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights (when the Auto Interior Lights function is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen) may stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key, or all doors will relock automatically and the four door handles retract.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- When the vehicle is in anti-theft status, press the lock button, the vehicle will emit a long sound and the turn signal will flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.

WARNING

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

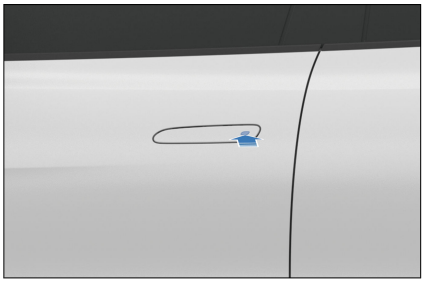
CAUTION

- To enable or disable the remote unlock function of the smart key, go to the infotainment touchscreen and tap **Vehicle**→ **Locks** (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- With the ignition switched off and doors closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle. All doors lock at the same time, and the hidden door handles retract automatically and the turn signal flashes twice.



Unlocking

- When the anti-theft alarm system is armed, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice. The hidden door handle extends automatically and the turn signal flashes twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking, or all doors will relock automatically and the four door handles retract.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The ignition is not switched off.
  - The smart key is left in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key

Locking doors

With doors closed but unlocked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the side mirror to lock all doors at the same time. If the vehicle is powered off, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Side Mirrors**) with turn signals flashing once.



Unlocking doors

When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the side mirror to unlock all doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.

- Doors will not be locked/unlocked when the NFC keys are close to the designated area on the side mirror when:
  - The NFC key is placed close to the designated area on the side mirror while a door is being opened or closed.
- To use the NFC digital key, turn on NFC on your phone and hold the top back of the phone near the NFC mark on the side mirror.

CAUTION

- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.

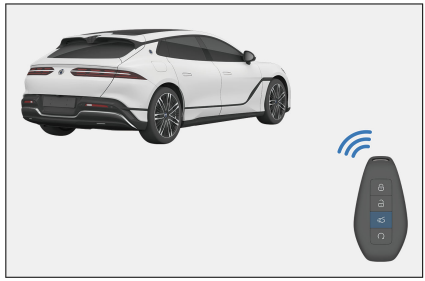
REMINDER

- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle without the key in a stipulated period, while this will be disabled after legal locking.
- The keyless start permission lasts for up to four minutes.
- For NFC key (smart phone) setup instructions, see ***P54*** for details.

Locking/Unlocking the Trunk

Opening/Closing trunk lid by Smart Key

- Double-press the trunk release button on the smart key. The trunk opens and the turn signals flash twice. Click the open button of the trunk again to stop the opening of the trunk lid. Double-click again to reverse the movement of the trunk lid.



REMINDER

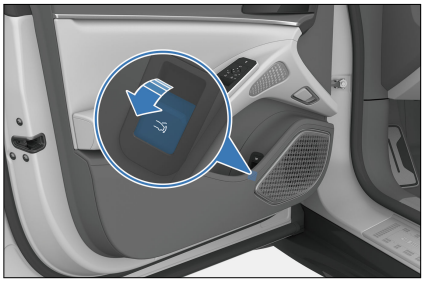
- In the process of opening or closing the trunk lid, operate the trunk lid open button again, and the trunk lid stops the current action.

Opening or closing the trunk Lid by the interior switch *

- When the luggage compartment lid is closed, pull the switch once to unlock

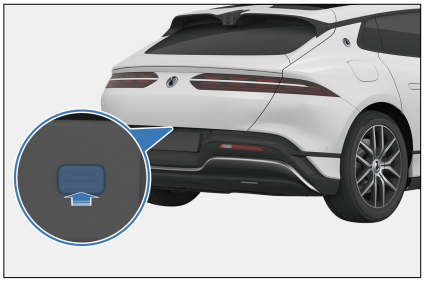
and open the luggage compartment lid to the set position (default maximum height).

- When the trunk lid is opened, pull the switch again, and the trunk lid will stop at the current position immediately and smoothly.
- After the vehicle is powered on and the trunk lid is open, pull up the switch for more than 1s, the trunk lid will be closed automatically, and stop closing immediately after releasing the switch.



The switch out of the Trunk Lid turns on Trunk Lid *

- When the vehicle is unlocked, press the trunk lid outer switch to open the trunk lid.
- When the vehicle is locked, press the exterior switch of the trunk lis while carrying a valid smart key to unlock the vehicle.

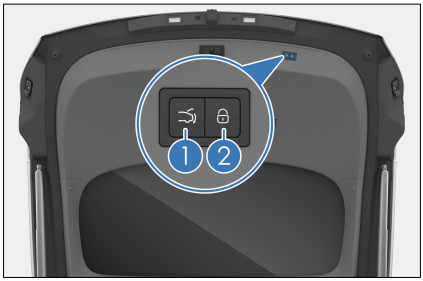


REMINDER

- During the action of the trunk lid, press the trunk lid exterior switch to stop the current action.

① The switch in Trunk Lid turns off Trunk Lid *

- When the trunk lid is open and stationary, press this button to close the lid.
- Press this button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. If the trunk lid close switch is pressed again after the trunk lid action stops, the trunk lid will execute the opposite action.



② Vehicle lock button*

- When the ignition is off and the trunk is open, pressing the lock switch while carrying a valid smart key closes the trunk, locks the vehicle, and arms the anti-theft alarm system.

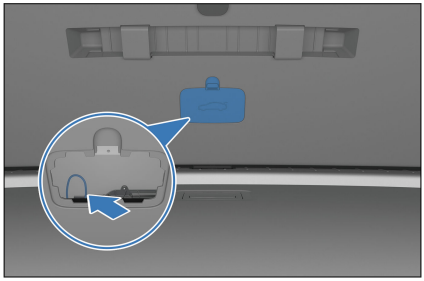
CAUTION

- Before closing the trunk with power, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

Emergency Trunk Releasing

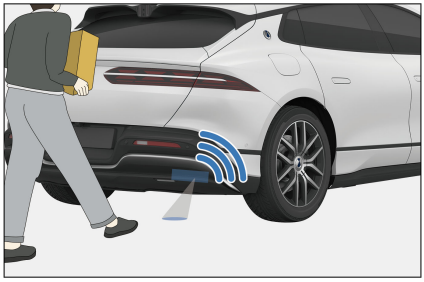
1. Fold down the rear seats (see***P69***).

2. Locate the emergency release cover directly above the trunk lid latch, then open the cover.
3. Pull the emergency release cable inside. After hearing the unlocking sound, the trunk lid can be opened from inside.

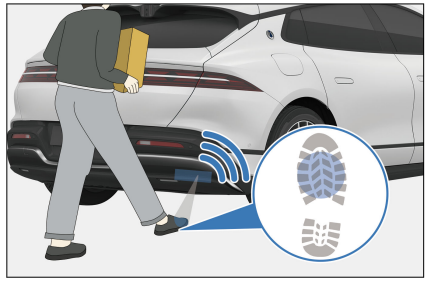


Opening the Trunk with Projection Sensing

1. When the trunk lid is closed, carry a valid smart key and stand within the sensing area behind the trunk, or unlock the vehicle using the App via NFC, UWB, or Bluetooth. The vehicle will automatically detect your presence and project a pattern onto the ground.



2. When your foot fully covers the projected pattern, the projection light will flash.



3. Remove your foot while the projection light is flashing rapidly to trigger automatic opening of the trunk lid.

WARNING

- Ensure there is sufficient space around the trunk lid during operation. Failure to do so may result in vehicle damage or personal injury.
- To prevent unintended opening, it is recommended to keep the smart key away from the trunk sensing area in the following situations:
  - You are to place or pick up an object at the rear of the vehicle.
  - You are to maintain (such as polish) the rear of the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Step on the center of the projected pattern, covering at least 95% of the area.
- Complete the stepping motion within 1.5–3.5 seconds. Stepping too briefly or for too long may result in failed recognition.
- If the system fails to detect your foot, or if you do not remove your foot in time while the light

CAUTION

is flashing, remove your foot, wait briefly, and repeat the operation.

- Placing your foot outside the projection area and then sliding it into the pattern is considered an invalid operation.
- When using the projection sensing function, ensure that a valid smart key is near the rear of the vehicle.
- The following factors may cause the projection pattern to fail to activate or disappear:
  - The vehicle has not been started for 48 hours or longer.
  - A valid key is left inside the vehicle.
  - The key signal is affected by electromagnetic interference (such as placed close to a phone or other electronic devices).
  - The key remains near the vehicle for approximately 1 minute.
- If the projection pattern does not appear, manually open and close the trunk once to reactivate the function.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking with central locking

See ***P85*** in "Driver's Door Switches" in this chapter.

Automatic locking or unlocking

- All doors automatically lock at 8 km/h or above.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. All doors unlock automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- When the vehicle is not in anti-theft mode, the backlight of the central locking button turns on if the vehicle is locked and turns off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

REMINDER

- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the smart key to lock or unlock the vehicle doors (see ***P59*** and ***P60***).

Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (see ***P64*** for details).

Auto Power On/Off

Enable or disable auto power on/off in the infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Locks**. This function is disabled by factory default.

Power on upon door opening

- When auto power on is enabled:
  - Unlock the vehicle with the smart key/microswitch/NFC/Bluetooth/BYD app.
  - When the driver's door is opened for the first time, the vehicle powers on automatically. The instrument cluster and infotainment system turn on and the "OK" indicator remains off.

Power on by pressing the brake pedal

- When auto power on is enabled and the vehicle is not powered on (the "OK" indicator is off), press the brake pedal with a valid smart key around or with keyless access authorized. The "OK" indicator will light up on the instrument cluster, indicating the vehicle enters a drivable state.

Auto power off

- When the vehicle is stationary and not powered off, lock the vehicle from outside using the smart key/ microswitch/NFC/the vehicle lock button on the trunk lid. The vehicle will automatically power off.

REMINDER

- Auto power on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- If you unlock and access the vehicle through a non-driver door, subsequent driver door opening will not activate the vehicle's auto power-on sequence after the vehicle is powered on then powered off.
- When auto power on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/ STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.
- Auto power on is not operational when the hood is open.

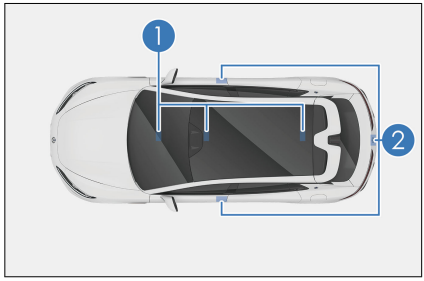
REMINDER

- To prevent false triggering, Bluetooth and cloud service can only lock but not power off the vehicle.
- In the case of auto power on by opening the driver's door, locking from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch, or NFC key automatically powers off the vehicle. There is no need to press the START/STOP button.

Antenna Positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna



Electronic Child Protection Lock

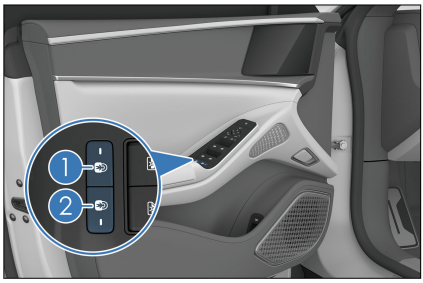
Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

① Left child protection lock

② Right child protection lock

Press the left/right child protection lock button to disable the left/right rear window switch and the interior door

handle. To open the door, use the exterior handle.



WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Do not fold or unfold the rear seats when the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on the cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback has been locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. Doing so makes it impossible to wear a seat belt correctly. The occupant risks being hit on the neck or other parts of the body by the shoulder belt, or slipping out of the waist belt, resulting in serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in

WARNING

motion, because unpredictable seat movement so cause could render the vehicle out of control.

- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- As seat area is not waterproof, a large amount of liquid can easily cause the controller to short-circuit and burn out.
- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets there. Be careful not to squeeze or hit children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space between your feet and those of surrounding passengers to avoid injury.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

CAUTION

- Be careful not to damage the seat belts when folding seats.
- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.

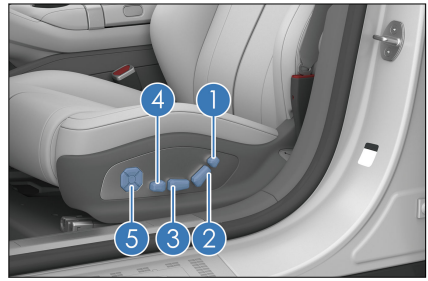
Adjusting Front Seat with Power

Electrically adjustable front seats include overall front-to-back adjustment, seat cushion height adjustment, seat cushion angle adjustment, backrest angle adjustment, leg rest adjustment, lumbar support adjustment, electric headrest adjustment, seat massage adjustment, and driver’ s side wing adjustment. Refer to the following according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

Seat Button Adjustment

Adjusting Head Supports

- Move the head supports adjustment button up and down to adjust the height.



CAUTION

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting head supports, make sure it is locked in the new position
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

REMINDER

- Front seats Head Supports can not be removed

② Seatback recline adjustment

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.

③ Seat position adjustment switch

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to slide the seat backward or forward.
- Move the front end of the switch up or down to adjust the seat base angle.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to adjust cushion height.

REMINDER

- Releasing the switch stops the seat. Do not place anything under the seat as this may clog seat movement.
- To avoid contact with the roof or sun visor, do not move the front seats too far forward.

④ Leg support adjustment

- Press the front or rear end of the switch to adjust the leg support.

⑤ Lumbar support adjustment

- Pressing the center button of the switches allows switching between the lumbar support adjustment mode, massage adjustment mode, and driver-side wing adjustment mode.
- Under lumbar support mode
  - When the upper button is pressed, the lumbar support triggers inflation of the upper airbag and deflation of the lower airbag.
  - When the lower button is pressed, the lumbar support triggers deflation of the upper airbag and inflation of the lower airbag.
  - When the left button is pressed, the lumbar support triggers deflation of the upper and lower airbag.
  - When the right button is pressed, the lumbar support triggers deflation of the upper airbag and the lower airbag.
- Under massage mode
  - Press upper or lower button to switch the message mode.
  - Press the right or left button to adjust the intensity of message.
  - The massage mode sequence is: “Massage (default) → Acupressure → Stretching → Waist Relaxation → Shoulder Kneading → Massage”. Pressing the upper button will cycle through the modes in the given order, while pressing the lower button will cycle through them in reverse order. The massage modes can be cycled through continuously.
  - There are three massage intensity levels, the default intensity is level 2. Pressing the left button switches the intensity to level 3, and further presses have no effect. Pressing the right button switches the intensity to level 1, and further presses have no effect. The massage intensity mode switching is non-cyclic.
  - When using the seat massage function, if no further operation is performed after the last adjustment, the seat massage will automatically stop after 15 minutes. If the user wishes to continue using the seat massage function, simply reactivate the seat massage switch or re-select the settings via the multimedia touchscreen massage interface.

- In the driver-side wing adjustment mode
  - Users can adjust the angle of the driver’ s side wing according to their personal preferences by pressing the up/down buttons.

REMINDER

- Users can select the seat to adjust in the ‘My Car’ App.
- Only the driver’ s seat is equipped with adjustable side wing.

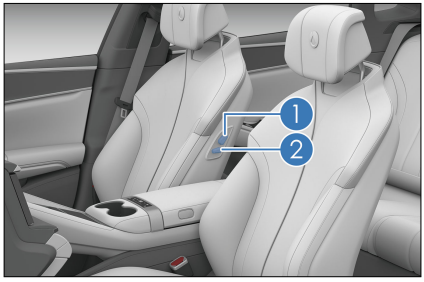
Adjusting front passenger seat

① Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.

② Seat position adjustment

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to slide the seat backward or forward.



WARNING

- Do not excessively adjust the seat cushion height or backrest angle while driving, as this may compromise body protection during a collision. Only when you sit up straight and properly recline

WARNING

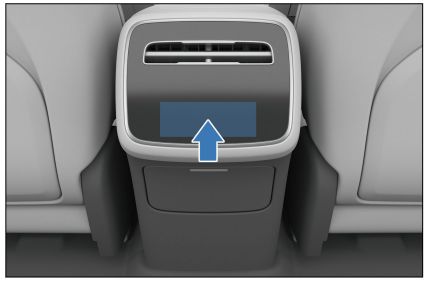
the seat back can the seat belt provide maximum protection.

Adjusting Rear Seat with Power

Rear seat adjustment includes seat backrest angle adjustment, seat leg support adjustment and seat massage function. Refer to the following according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

Rear row Control Panel

- The following rear seat functions can be adjusted via control panel under the rear central air outlet:
  - Seat Massage
  - Seat Ventilation
  - Seat Heating*



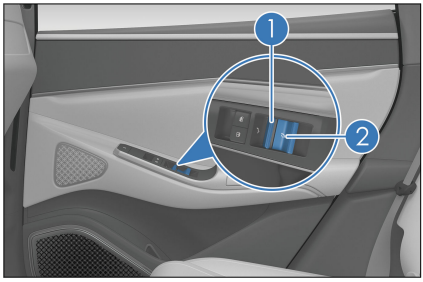
Seat Button Adjustment

① Leg support adjusting handle

- The front and rear toggle handles ① can control the extension and retraction of the rear seat leg support.

② Seatback angle adjustment handle

- The angle of the seat backrest can be adjusted by moving the front and rear handles ②

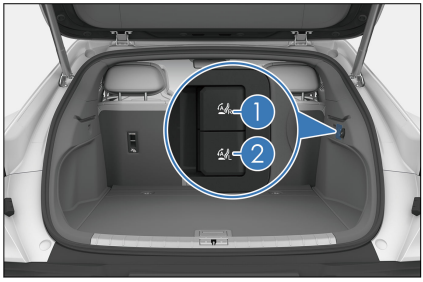


Adjusting trunk by buttons

① Rear right seat reclining/resetting handle

② Rear left seat reclining/resetting handle

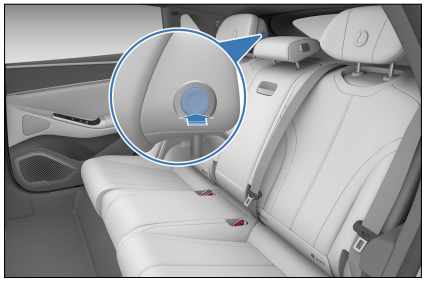
- In the initial state of the right/left seat in the rear row, press the handle ①/②, and the backrest of the right/left seat in the rear row will automatically recline forward.
  - When the backrest of the right/left seat in the rear row is put forward, pull the handle ①/②, and the backrest of the right/left seat in the rear row will stop at the current position.



- When the rear right/left seat is laid down, pull the handle ①/②, and the rear right/left seat backrest will automatically return to the initial position.

Rear seats head support adjustment

Press the button shown in the right figure to adjust the left and right headrests in the rear row up and down.



- Lifting a head support
  - Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
- Lowering a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly adjust the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.

CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.

REMINDER

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.

REMINDER

- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting head supports, make sure it is locked in the new position
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Heating and Ventilation System

- The front and rear row seats are equipped with seat heating and ventilation systems. To turn on or off the systems, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to display the shortcut page, or go to the A/C operation interface.
- Rear passengers can adjust the heating and ventilation of the rear seats via the vent panel screen.

Heating adjustment

- Seat heating: Tap the buttons to control the seat heater, which has three levels
- The heating system defaults to off after power-on.

Ventilation adjustment

- Seat ventilation: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the associated controls to select between the three seat ventilation levels.
- The ventilation system defaults to off after power-on.

The heating system defaults to off after power-on.

- When ventilated seat is active, turning on the heater stops it.
- When heated seat is active, turning on the ventilator stops it.

Mutually-exclusive ventilated and heated seats

- When ventilated seat is active, turning on the heater stops it.
- When heated seat is active, turning on the ventilator stops it.

Memory System

Memory switch position

Set the memory switch position by tap "My Car" App on the infotainment touchscreen. There are three memory modes for the driver seat, two memory modes for the front passenger seat, and no memory function for the rear seats.

Memory setting function

- Memory setting conditions
  - The ignition has been switched on and the vehicle speed is zero.
  - The driver's seat, side mirrors and steering wheel* have been adjusted to the desired positions.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat, side mirrors and steering wheel*.
- Memory setting method
  - Press and hold any position button on the seat memory setting interface. Then the positions of the seat, side mirrors and steering wheel* will be recorded with the infotainment system prompting "Location saved" to confirm the memory setting is complete.

- Briefly press any position button on the seat memory setting interface to restore the previous memory position.

Memory recall function

Regular memory wake-up

- With the gearshift lever in the "P" position, pressing the memory system switch enables the driver's seat memory system to perform memory wake-up, if:
  - The anti-theft alarm system has disarmed.
  - The vehicle speed is zero.
  - Memory switch signals are valid.

WARNING

- Ensure there are no obstacles around the seat before activating the seat memory recall function.
- Ensure that no part of your body is within the seat's movement range during the seat memory recall process.
- Do not allow children to operate the memory switches to prevent any injury during seat movement.

Automatic driver seat

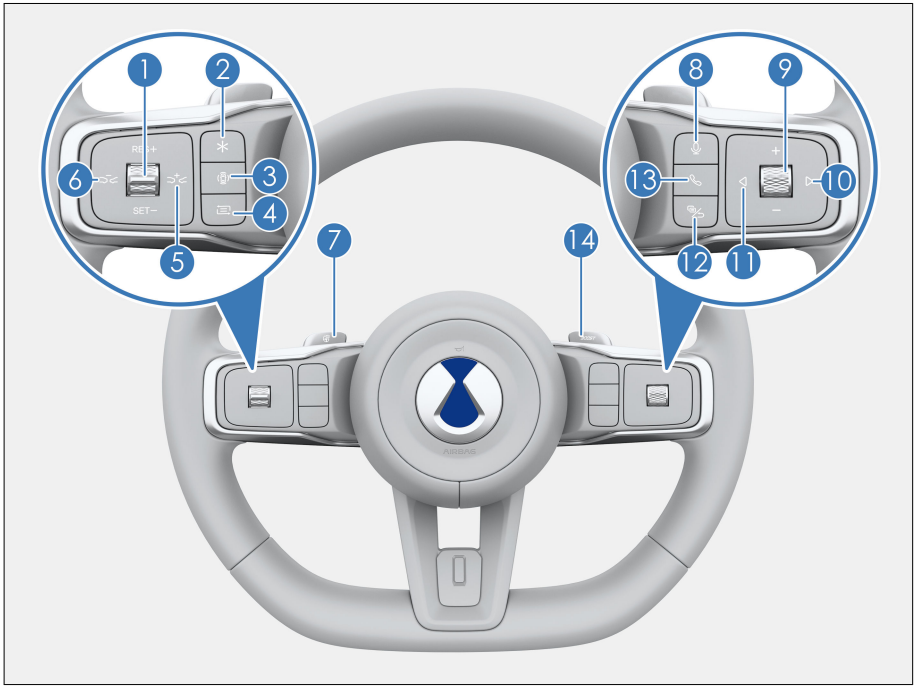
- Automatic backward:
  - When the vehicle power is switched from "START" to "STOP", the seat automatically retracts upon front door opening if not fully rearward, facilitating passenger exit.
  - Upon remote key unlocking and driver' door opening, if the seat position was activated by the automatic backward function prior to last exit and has not been manually adjusted, the front seat automatically retracts to facilitate passenger entry.
- Automatic forward:
  - When the vehicle power is switched from "STOP" to "START" and the passenger's door is closed, the seat will automatically move forward to the position before the last power-off if no position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered upon the last power-off.
  - The seat returns to its last position, as a preparation for the next trigger of the feature, when the vehicle power is switched from "START" to "STOP" and the passenger's door closes, if no position adjustment has been performed after auto rearward triggering.

REMINDER

- If there is a passenger in the rear seat behind the driver or the rear seat belt is fastened, the automatic driver seat function will be disabled to prevent the risk of pinching.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1	Rocker switch	8	Voice assistant
2	Custom	9	Scroll button
3	Around view monitor	10	Right
4	Menu	11	Left
5	Distance +	12	Instrument cluster/Back
6	Distance -	13	Call
7	Driver assistance paddle	14	Sport+ paddle*

The audio control switch is operational when the ignition is switched on.

Left-hand buttons

Driver assistance paddle

- Press this paddle to enable or disable ACC.

Custom

- Short press the custom button to activate the dashcam for photo or video recording.
- Long press to configure the short-press function.

Around view monitor

- Press this button to enable or disable the around view monitor (AVM) system.

Menu

- Press this button to switch the left-side menu information on the instrument cluster.

Distance +

- Increases the time-based following distance by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Rocker switch

- Reset/+: Activates the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system and uses the previous system settings.
- Set/-: Sets to cruise at the current speed.

Distance -

- Decreases the time-based following distance by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Right-hand buttons

Sport+ paddle*

- Short press to enter the Sport+ mode.

Voice assistant

- Press this button for the infotainment touchscreen to switch to the voice assistant screen.
- After exiting the voice assistant, press this button again to re-record a voice command.

Left/Right

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous radio station.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next radio station.
- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press the ◁ button to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press the ▷ button to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.

Scroll button

- When the instrument cluster is in normal mode, rotate the button to adjust the infotainment system volume as follows:
  - Rotate the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
  - Rotate the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
  - Press down the button to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, rotate the button to switch from the following functions:
  - Infotainment system (default): Press the button ◁ and ▷ to switch between the previous/next track.

Rotate the button to adjust the volume.

- Navigation: Rotate the button to switch among the navigation screen display items via the Map app.
- Speed limit reminder: Press and hold the rotate button to enter the speed limit screen. Rotate the button to set or disable the speed limit reminder and press the button to confirm or exit.
- Acceleration timer: The timer is only available when the speed is 0 and the vehicle is in Sport mode. Long press the scroll button to activate the function and press again to exit. The timer exits automatically after 60 seconds.

- When the instrument cluster is in driving information display mode, rotate the button to switch among the following functions:
  - Tire pressure (default): displays tire temperature and pressure readings from the direct tire pressure monitoring system.
  - Average energy consumption (last 50 km): displays the average energy consumption over the last 50 km. Press and hold the scroll button to reset the data.
  - Average energy consumption (cumulative): displays the cumulative average energy consumption.

REMINDER

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in menu mode, press this button to display the instrument menu. Rotate the scroll button to switch among menu items, and press briefly to confirm the selection.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to display the driving information selection screen. Rotate the scroll button to switch among driving information items, and press briefly to confirm the selection. If there is no higher-level menu, the system will exit the menu.
- During a Bluetooth call, press this button to end the call.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call. (The audio system is muted at the same time.)
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the dial screen or selecting a record on the call log or contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Horn

- Press the horn area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

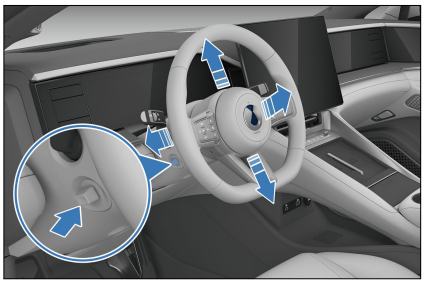
REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting Steering Wheel with Power

- When the vehicle power is in the OK mode, the steering wheel can be adjusted.
  - Move the steering wheel adjustment lever up, down, left, and right to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position, then return the lever to its original position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, and lead to accidents.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- To set the steering assist mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen and tap → **Drive** → **Driving Settings** → **Steering Assist Mode**, and select Comfort or Sport.

REMINDER

- Setting the power steering to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed. Steering mode can only be changed in normal terrain mode with ELKA off and a vehicle speed lower than 80 km/h.

Rearview Mirrors

Side Mirrors

Side Mirror Adjustment Buttons

Selection buttons

Left side mirror button

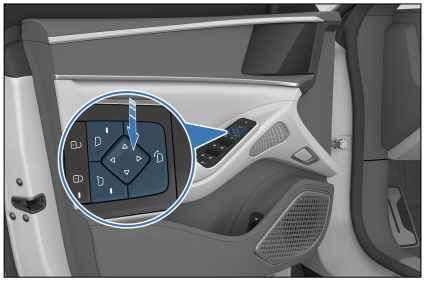
Right side mirror button

Adjustment button

Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to a right position.

Folding button

Press this button to fold or expand side mirrors.

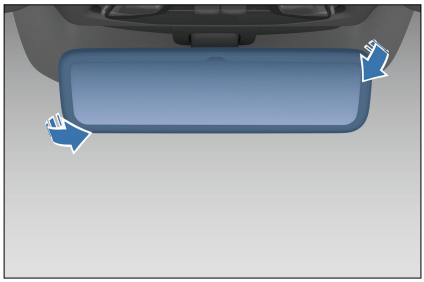


REMINDER

- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.
- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Adjustment while driving poses distraction, increasing the chance of an accident.

Interior Rearview Mirrors

- Move the interior rearview mirror up, down, left, or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror, to prevent the mirror from falling off.
- Adjust the rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention, causing personal injury or death from accidents.

Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*

The interior rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function*, which automatically adjusts the color of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of view.

Streaming Rearview Mirror*

The streaming rearview mirror provides two modes: streaming mode and traditional rearview mirror mode.

Streaming mode

- You can enable or disable the streaming rearview mirror via the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Mirrors** → **Streaming Rearview Mirror**
- When enabled, real-time images captured by the rear camera can be displayed on the streaming rearview mirror screen. After enabling streaming mode adjustment on the infotainment touchscreen (→ **Vehicle** → **Rearview Mirror** → **Streaming Rearview Mirror**), you can use the left/right arrow buttons on the steering wheel to adjust the viewing angle, screen brightness, and image size, and use the scroll button to switch levels. (See ***P77***)

REMINDER

- The infotainment touchscreen is for display purposes only and cannot be used to adjust the streaming rearview mirror. Follow the on-screen instructions and use the right-side steering wheel controls for adjustment.
- Since the interior rearview mirror also functions as a conventional mirror, both the reflective image and the streaming image may appear simultaneously under strong light conditions, causing a ghosting effect. In this case, manually adjust the mirror angle to reduce ghosting and improve visibility.

Traditional rearview mirror mode

- When streaming mode is turned off, the mirror operates in traditional rearview mirror mode. In this mode, the mirror functions as a standard reflective mirror.

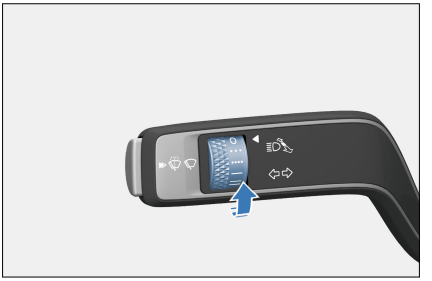
Wipers

Wiper Switches

Windshield Wipers and Washer

Front wipers

- The lever is used to control the front windshield wipers and washer among the following five modes:
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 1
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 2
  - : Slow
  - : fast
  - 0 : Front wipers off
- To select a mode, slide the control button up or down.
- In slow and fast modes, the wiper operates continuously.



- Enable "Auto Wiper" on the infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive** → **Driving Settings** → **Comfort**. The wipers swipe once, enter the automatic mode, and then work based on the rain intensity.
- In auto mode, rotate the wiper button to select the auto wiper speed.

WARNING

- If the ignition is on, and the wipers are set to auto mode, touching or wiping the glass on the sensor area may activate the wipers and cause an accident.

CAUTION

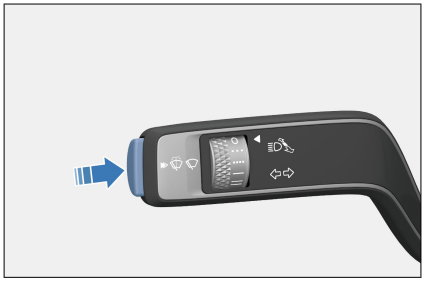
- Turn off the auto wipers vehicle washes, in dry weather, or on rain-free days, to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.
- If snow or other debris causes the wipers to stop mid-operation, turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe location. Then clear the

CAUTION

snow or debris to allow the wipers to function correctly.

- The sensor may occasionally fail to properly detect snowflakes, as they have various shapes, which could lead to wiper malfunction. After the snow melts, the wipers may automatically activate.
- To avoid damage or injury caused by unintended wiper activation, turn off the automatic wiper function when washing the vehicle, during sandstorms, in dry weather, or when there is ice or snow on the windshield. The rain-sensing wiper is an assistance feature. For your safety, activate wiper proactively as required by actual road conditions.

- To operate the wipers in point-wiping mode, press the button at the end of the paddle to the first position. The wipers swipe at a low speed until the button is released.



Front windshield washer

- To clean the front windshield, press the button at the end of the control lever to the second position. The washer spray continuously, and the wipers will start working afterward.
- When the stick is released, or when it is held for over 10 seconds, the washer spray stops, and the wipers stop after operating for 3–4 cycles.

CAUTION

- Do not operate the washer consecutively for over 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty, or the motor may overheat or be damaged.

REMINDER

- Clean the wipers regularly.
- If conditions permit, avoid using the wipers immediately when it starts raining, because the mixture of rainwater and dust will not clean the windshield effectively and may instead instantly blur your view, posing a risk to safety.
- Plain water or other types of detergent may damage the washer motor.

Replacing Wiper Blades

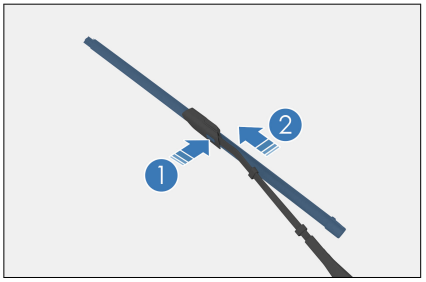
Inspect wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

Replacing Wiper Blades

With the ignition on, turn the wiper service function on or off in the infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Maintenance** → **Overhaul**. When the wiper service function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

Replacing front wipers

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the locking tab ①.
3. Hold tab and slide the blade down the arm as indicated by ②.
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Avoid direct impact onto the windshield when lowering wiper blades.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

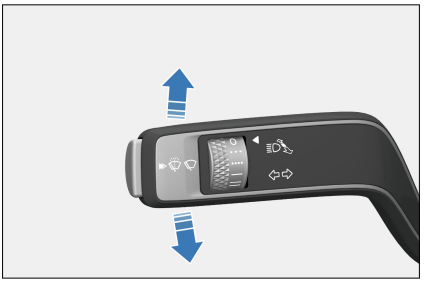
Switches

Light Switches

- Auto lights, position lights, low beams, rear fog lights, and daytime running lights can be controlled on the infotainment touchscreen.
- The switches can be found in → **Light** → **Exterior**.

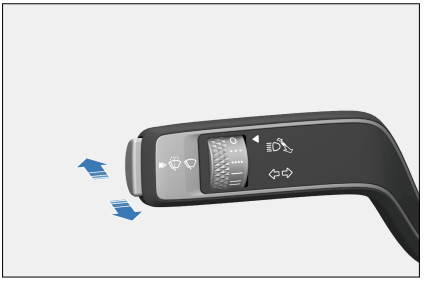
Turn signals

- Push up the stalk to signal a right turn and down to signal a left turn.



High beam

- Push forward or backward the lever to turn on or off the high beam.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located at the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto light off

- Activation conditions: To activate this function, set the light switch to or and switch off the vehicle power.
- After enabling the auto light off function:
  - With this feature active, the headlights, position lights, rear fog

lights, and high beam turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.

- With this feature active, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beam turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.

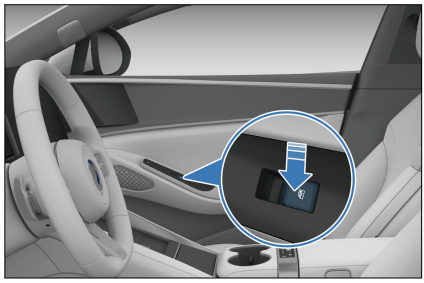
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off feature has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off after 10 seconds. But if any door is open, it turns off the lights in 10 minutes.

Lighting delay

- Off delay:
  - After you power off and lock the vehicle, the auto lights , position lights , or low beams , whichever position the stalk is preset to, stay on for 10 seconds by default to illuminate your exit. This duration can be changed in the infotainment touchscreen → → **Light** → **Exterior** → **Headlights after Exit**.
- Entry lighting:
  - When you unlock the vehicle, the auto lights , position lights , or low beams , whichever position the stalk is preset to, stay on for 10 seconds by default while you are approaching. This duration is changeable in the route mentioned.

Passengers' Window Switches

- When the ignition is on or off (within the delay function period), use the front passenger and rear door window switches to operate the respective windows.



Odometer Switch

- The driving range display mode can be adjusted in
- the infotainment touchscreen → → **Display** → **Instrument** → **Always Display Mileage**.
  - Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
  - Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorized by the system.
  - When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the Dynamic driving range display mode is set:
  - The driving range on a full charge varies, depending on calculations of the energy consumed in your last drive.
  - The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode (ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, etc.) selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Sunshade Switches

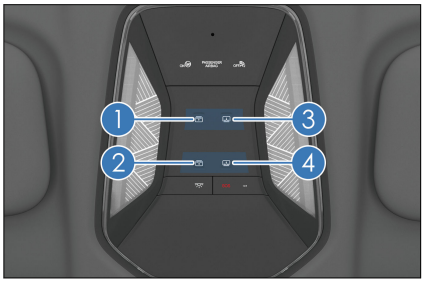
Sunshade switches

① Front sunshade open button

② Front sunshade close button

③ Rear sunshade open button

④ Rear sunshade close button



Opening the sunshade

- Front sunshade
  - Touch and hold the button ① to open the sunshade automatically. Releasing the button stops the sunshade midway.
  - Briefly touch the button ① to open the sunshade automatically. Touching button ① or ② in this process stops the sunshade midway.
- Rear sunshade
  - Touch and hold the button ③ to open the sunshade automatically. Releasing the button stops the sunshade midway.
  - Briefly touch the button ③ to open the sunshade automatically. Touching button ③ or ④ in this process stops the sunshade midway.

Closing the sunshade

- Front sunshade
  - Touch and hold the button ② to close the sunshade automatically. Releasing the button stops the sunshade midway.
  - If the sunshade has been initialized, briefly touching button ② closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop midway, touch button ① or ②.
- Rear sunshade
  - Touch and hold the button ④ to close the sunshade automatically. Releasing the button stops the sunshade midway.
  - If the sunshade has been initialized, briefly touching button ④ closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop midway, touch button ④ or ③.

Sunshade switches on the rear AC control panel

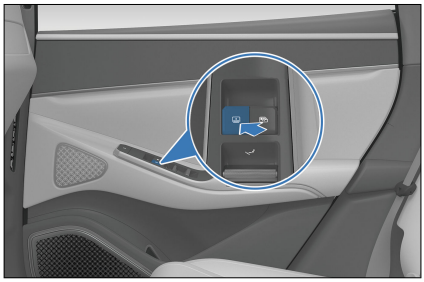
You can adjust the sunshade curtain through the rear switch button.

Sunshade switches on the rear passenger sides

- Open the rear sunshade: Toggle up and hold the switch to open the sunshade

automatically. Releasing the button stops the sunshade midway.

- Closing the rear sunshade： Pull down and hold the switch to close the sunshade automatically. Releasing the button stops the sunshade midway.



CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.

Sunshade Anti-pinch

When the sunshade is being closed, if an object is detected and its resistance is larger than the set value, the anti-pinch function is activated and the sunshade stops after opening slightly.

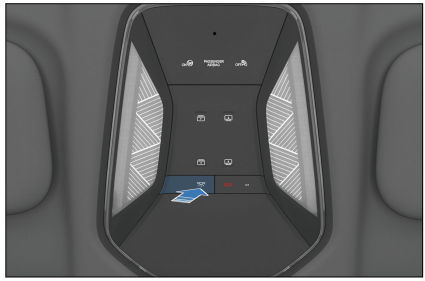
Initialization

- With the ignition on, if the signal remains valid and the sunshade is in the uninitialized state, try the following steps for initialization:
  - Press the close button to the fully closed position and hold on for at least 5 seconds to initialize the sunshade.
  - If the sunshade does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunshade close button, and release it when the sunshade stops moving. Hold the button again for at least five seconds until the sunshade is fully closed.

Interior Light Switches

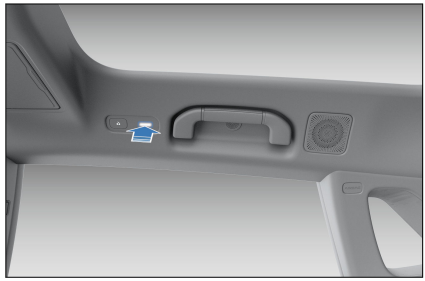
Front Interior Lights

In any ignition status, touch the cover of front interior lights to turn on the lights.



Rear Interior Lights

In any ignition status, touch the cover of rear interior lights to turn on the lights.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is not powered off, "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, opening any door and touching the interior light will switch the brightness between high and low levels instead of turning the light off.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, press the interior light master switch to illuminate both the front map lights and side reading lights; depress the interior light master switch again to turn off both the front map lights and side reading lights.

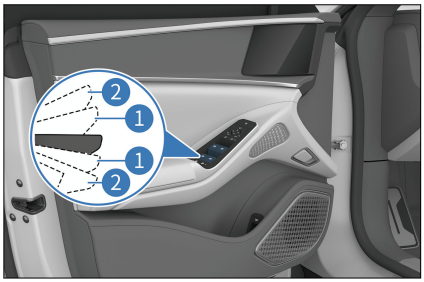
Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

When the ignition is on, the window switches can be used to roll up or down the corresponding windows. After the vehicle is powered OFF, no power windows can be regulated.

The driver's side window switch has two control positions: ① and ②, as shown in the illustration.

- While using the switch, release it to stop window halfway.



- Driver's side power window: Press all the way down and release the switch to open the window. Lift all the way up and release the switch to close the window. Press the switch again to halt the current action.

Manual operation

- Press or pull a window switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Automatic up/down

- Press or pull the window control switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window all the way.

Anti-pinch function

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down automatically.

Anti-pinch initialization

- If the low-voltage battery is disconnected while a window is being rolled up or down, the automatic rolling-up and anti-pinch functions both cease to work.
- Pull and hold the window control switch for the first time, so that the window rises to the top for stalling for at least 400 ms. Release your hand when the window rises to the top.

WARNING

Follow the precautions below to prevent serious injuries or death from window closing:

- Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
- Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can

CAUTION

activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

Central Locking

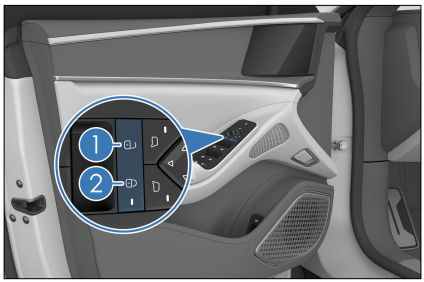
The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches. Use them to lock or unlock all doors.

① Unlocking

Press this button to unlock the four doors. The red lock indicator turns off now.

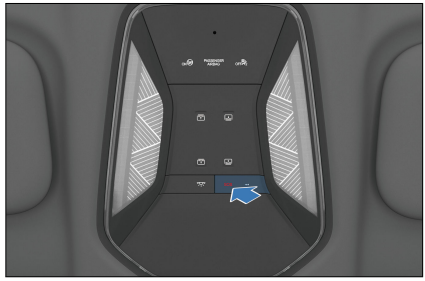
② Locking

Press this button to lock the four doors. The red lock indicator lights up now.



Emergency Call (E-Call)

- E-Call refers to emergency call. Pressing and holding the SOS button for 1–10 seconds triggers the E-Call system manually, and pressing and holding the button for 10–20 seconds does not.
- To cancel an emergency call made by mistake, press the SOS button a second time within five seconds.
- The E-Call system activates automatically in the event of airbag deployment.



- When triggered, the system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates relevant vehicle and accident information to a public safety answering point.

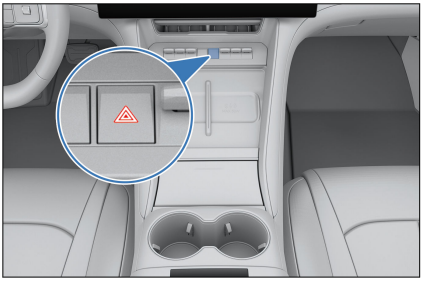
CAUTION

- If pressed and held for over 20 seconds, the SOS button will be considered to be short-circuited (stuck). In that case, E-Call cannot be triggered manually.
- The dialed emergency call cannot be canceled manually. The E-Call system will begin a 60-minute callback period after the call is hung up by the public safety answering point or has not been answered 10 consecutive times.

Status	LED Indicator	Beeping
Ignition off or E-Call system failure	Off	\
Power-on self-check mode	Flashing fast - 2 Hz	\
Ignition on and self-check passed	Solid on if self-check is passed	\
E-Call connecting	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call connected	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call ended	Solid on	Two beeps after E-Call ends
Callback time (60 minutes by default)	Solid on	\

Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



CAUTION

- The hazard warning lights are used to alert drivers and pedestrians of possible risks.

Passenger Airbag Switch*

- The front passenger airbag can be deactivated if the vehicle is equipped with a passenger airbag (PAB) switch.
- You can turn on or off the PAB switch on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Settings**.
- The front passenger airbag indicator is located on the ceiling and the infotainment touchscreen status bar.
- Check that the switch is in the required position.
- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:
  - When the switch is turned on, the passenger airbag is enabled and the "PASSENGER AIRBAG ON" indicator on the ceiling is illuminated. The indicator PASSENGER AIRBAG ON appears in the status bar for 100 seconds before disappearing. Tapping it shows a pop-up indicating the passenger airbag is enabled. The passenger

airbag deploys in moderate to severe collisions meeting activation criteria.

- When the switch is turned off, the passenger airbag is enabled and the "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" indicator on the ceiling is illuminated. The indicator PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF appears in the status. Tapping it shows a pop-up indicating the passenger airbag is disabled. The front passenger airbag does not deploy in moderate to severe collisions meeting activation criteria.

WARNING

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat with an activated passenger airbag. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injuries or death.
- When the front passenger seat is occupied with an adult, the passenger airbag switch must be turned on to always keep the front passenger airbag active.
- If the front passenger airbag remains active when the front passenger airbag switch is off, immediately contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- It is the driver's responsibility to confirm that the passenger airbag switch is in the correct position for the person sitting in the front passenger seat.

04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging..... 90
Batteries..... 106
Usage Precautions..... 108
Starting and Driving..... 118
Driver Assistance..... 145

Charging/ Discharging

Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- The charging connector uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in thunderstorms, or areas with hazardous liquids, fire or heat sources, or flammable or explosive items.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of the charge port or charge base.
- Charging may affect medical electronic devices and even cause serious personal injury or death. If you use any medical electronic device (such as implantable pacemaker or implantable cardiovascular defibrillator), confirm before charging with the device manufacturer whether normal operation of the device will be affected.

Warnings for charging equipment

- Use EV charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Ensure the quality of charging equipment.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment if the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions:
  - The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the ground cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock.
  - The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet meeting safety standards.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.

Pre-charging warnings

- Ensure that there is no water or foreign materials in the charge ports of the vehicle, power supply equipment, and charging equipment, nor damage or bad effect caused by metal terminal rust or corrosion. In the event of any of the situations above, do not charge.

Warnings during charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, pay attention to the following precautions during charging:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charge port, charging connector, or plug.

- Do not charge or touch the vehicle in a thunderstorm. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment or personal injuries.
- Close the DC charge port cap when AC charging.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, such as peculiar smell or smoke, stop immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.

Warnings after charging

- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charge port door before driving.

Charging Precautions

- Although AC and DC charging can be carried out in any power mode, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging to ensure safety. The vehicle cannot be powered on during charging.
- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, the original charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to use early stop set for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- When the vehicle is not used for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.

Precautions for charging equipment

- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, pay attention to the followings:
  - Before starting the vehicle, check that the charging equipment is disconnected. When the charging connector is loosely inserted, you may still be able to power on the vehicle and drive it. Driving with charging equipment connected will damage the equipment and the vehicle.
  - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
  - To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
  - If the charge port door and charging connector are frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not forcibly open the charge port door or pull out the charging connector.
  - To prevent damage to the vehicle and the charge port, do not shake the charging connector during charging.
  - Do not force the charging connector in with the immobilizer system activated.
- Take caution when using the equipment.
  - The charging cable has a limited reach. Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
  - Prevent any mechanical impact, such as fall and collide, on the charging/discharging equipment. Take caution when moving the equipment.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heating sources.

- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector.

Precautions before charging

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
- Unlock and open the charge port door. Hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.

Precautions during charging

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging. Do not block the front of the vehicle within half a meter.
- It is normal that the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily as the battery temperature control system is working during charging.
- Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- Too high or too low battery temperatures compromise vehicle charging performance.
  - In the case of low-temperature charging, the temperature control system can improve the battery's low-temperature charging capacity, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. This is normal.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is better to charge the vehicle in a heated space indoors.
  - In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- The estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster It is normal that it may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC and charging facilities.

REMINDER

- During the charging process, if the user finds that the charging power of the instrument drops after unlocking with the key, door armrest or door handle, it is a normal phenomenon, and the normal charging will resume after 30 seconds.

Precautions after charging:

- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector by pressing and holding its button*.
- After charging, unlock it first and then pull out the charging connector.
- Suggestions for using mode 2 charging cable: To stop charging, remove the

charging connector and then the power plug.

- After unplugging the charging connector, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.

Recommendations for improving the driving experience:

- When the State of Charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately.
- It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it for better charging performance.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	Charging card in arrears or faulty charging pile.	Consult card balance or contact charging station staff.
	The AC charging connector is not properly plugged in.	Ensure the charger switch* has come up. Check cable length and connection correctness.
	Low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Connect the vehicle to another 12V low-voltage battery to charge its own low-voltage battery after the vehicle is powered on.
	The local standard grounded socket has no power supply.	Check whether the power supply is under overload protection and use other sockets.
	The vehicle or AC charging connector fails.	Stop charging and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if power system fault warning light or charging system fault message is found on the instrument cluster.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
Charging stops midway.	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.
	The charging connection switch* is pressed.	If the charging connection switch is pressed, the charging will stop. The charging connection should be connected again to start charging.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The power is off.	After the power is restored in a period of time, the charging connection should be connected again to start charging.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	After the charging stops automatically, charge the battery after it cools down.
	The vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check Before Charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Make sure the metal terminals of power plug, socket, charging connector, or port are not loose or damaged by rust, corrosion, or ablation.
  - Make sure the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is not visibly stained or damp. In any of the event, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*

1. Equipment

- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- This EV mode 2 charging cable includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. The plug should be connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- See "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.
- The highest working temperature allowed for the charging equipment is 50°C. Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the

WARNING

front of the vehicle, or near the tires.

- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- It is prohibited to modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and its ports.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/ connector.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment if the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.

CAUTION

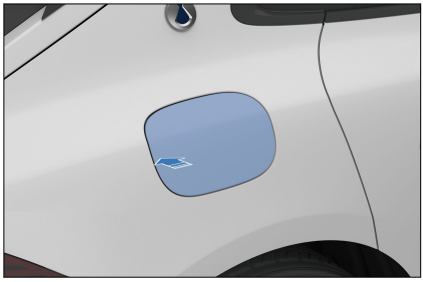
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- See "Charging Instructions" for specific charging precautions.

REMINDER

- It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions: The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge, reducing the risk of electric shock. When poor grounding occurs in the power supply during charging, users may notice a mild sensation on the vehicle body — this is due to incomplete grounding causing a “floating voltage” phenomenon. When touching the vehicle body in damp or snowy/ rainy conditions, a mild sensation may be experienced, but there will be no personal injury. To ensure safety, it is recommended to immediately stop charging and contact a professional to check the reliability of the power grid grounding, eliminating potential hazards. If you have any doubts, you can consult through official channels at any time, and we will provide further support.
- The power plug must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply socket which meets the requirements of safety standards.

2. Charging

- With doors unlocked and the vehicle preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.



- Open the charge port cap (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail), and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



REMINDER

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, it is suggested to warm up it with hot water and then open the port door. Do not force it open.

- Connect to the power supply terminal:
  - Plug the EV Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket.
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the charging connector (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail), plug the connector into the port, and release the lock button.
  - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- Do not force the charging connector in or out while the charge port is locked.

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P100*** for details.

REMINDER

- During charging, the estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen. and may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.
- Scheduled charging cannot be used when the SOC is too low.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
  - Press the unlock button on the smart key or press the door handle microswitch (while carrying the smart key), and pull out the charging connetor within 30 seconds，then the vehicle will stop charging.
- Unplug the charging connector:

- If the anti-theft lock is deactivated, press the mechanical button of the charging connector or pull out the charging connector as needed.
- When the immobilizer is enabled, press the unlock button on the smart key or press the door handle microswitch while carrying the smart key, press the button on the charging connector (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail), and then pull it out.

REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition off) or press the microswitch (when the key is nearby).
- Unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.
- You can activate the anti-theft lock on the infotainment touchscreen, see ***P101*** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking (see ***P102***).
- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly when the charge port's immobilizer system is deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the charge port cap and press the button on the port to close the port door.
- Store the charging equipment properly.

REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

- Never drop the mode 2 charging cable or pull it directly by its cable. Take caution when moving the equipment. Store the equipment in a cool place after use.

Using AC Charging Piles*

1. Equipment

- AC charging box
  - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - AC charging box: It consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
- AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle using an AC charging pile in a public place.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen.

2. Charging

- Unlock the vehicle and open the charge port door:
  - Open the charge port cap and the port door (see instructions for mode 2 charging).
- Connect to the vehicle port:

- Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.

- Charging settings:
  - For AC charging pile/box subject to authentication, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile/box for details.
- The charging connection indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P100*** for details.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
  - Press the unlock button on the smart key or press the door handle microswitch (while carrying the smart key), and pull out the charging connetor within 30 seconds，then the vehicle will stop charging.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Disconnect as per the instructions in ***P94***.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door (see ***P94***).
- Store the equipment properly.
  - If an AC charging pile/box is used, place the charging connector in its designated location.

Using DC Charging Piles*

Before using DC charging piles

- To prevent serious personal injury, see Charging Safety Warnings in "Charging Instructions" carefully.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, read and observe Charging Precautions in "Charging Instructions".

Equipment

- Use the DC battery charger in public places to charge the vehicle. Generally, it is installed in a specific charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Check the instructions of the charging piles.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.
2. Open the DC charge port cap:
   - Open protective cap of the charging connector and vehicle socket. Make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Connect the DC charging connector to the vehicle's DC charge port and ensure it is securely attached.

3. Start charging:
   - Operate the charging equipment as instructed to start charging.
3. The charging connection indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- Limited by the output capacity of the charging pile, the super charging experience suggests giving priority to the use of BYD super charging pile. When the output power of the charging pile is insufficient, the instrument will prompt “tips: The current charging power is limited by the charging pile.”
- Within the appropriate battery temperature range, the charging power of the battery can be better exerted. It is suggested that users turn on the "intelligent temperature preset" function in advance before experiencing super charging, and the vehicle temperature control system will control the battery temperature in advance.
- During charging, the estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster and may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities. If the battery temperature is too low, in order to shorten the low temperature charging time, the intelligent temperature control system function will be started. At this time, there will be a short-term deviation between the instrument power and the charging power of the charging pile, which is a normal phenomenon. Once the battery temperature reaches a suitable range and this function is exited, the deviation will be eliminated.
- After DC charging is completed, the battery cooling system may still be in operation, and the instrument cluster will display “The intelligent temperature control system for the power battery is in operation.” During the cooling process ,the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.

Stopping charging

1. End charging.
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - If the anti-theft lock is deactivated, press the mechanical button of the charging connector or pull out the charging connector as needed.
   - When the immobilizer is enabled, press the unlock button on the smart key twice or press the door handle microswitch while carrying the smart key, press the button on the charging connector (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail), and then pull it out.
3. Close the DC charge port cap and the port door.
4. Organize the equipment:
   - When charging is complete, organize the charging equipment and store the charging connector in its designated position.

WARNING

- See section "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.

CAUTION

- Due to the output capability limitations of the charging piles, some 1000V ultra-fast charging piles may experience voltage limitation, which could prevent charging on certain ultra-fast charging piles.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking (see Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port). If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see "Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port" in "Charging Port Immobilizer System".
- To unlock the charge port after DC charging, press the unlock button twice within three seconds.
- If the connector cannot be pulled out after charging, contact the charger service provider in a timely manner.
- See "Charging Instructions" for specific charging precautions.

Smart Charging

- You can access the setting screen in any of the following ways:
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Smart Charging app.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Smart Charging**.
  - Say "Hi DENZA, start smart charging (or scheduled charging)", "Hi DENZA, I want to start smart charging (or scheduled charging)", or "Hi DENZA, please help me start smart charging (or scheduled charging)".
- Exit the Smart Charging screen by tapping or or calling the BYD Assistant.
  - Say "Hi DENZA, stop smart charging (or scheduled charging)" or "Hi DENZA, exit smart charging (or scheduled charging)".

Smart charging settings

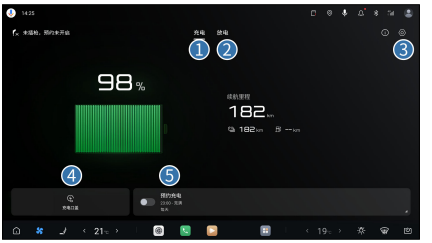
① Switch to scheduled charging

② Switch to discharging

③ Smart charging settings

④ Charge port door settings

④ Scheduled charging settings



- Tap ③ to go to the scheduled charging screen:
- Tap ⑤ to access settings such as ignition off reminder, charging temperature, and AC charge port immobilizer.

CAUTION

- Scheduled charging is developed for DENZA's AC charging equipment only. Please disable this feature when using slow AC charging equipment that is not certified by DENZA. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of battery pack. If you need to use this feature on a public charging facility, make sure it supports scheduling from the vehicle system.

Scheduled charging settings

① Scheduled charging start time

② Scheduled charging end time

③ Repeat cycle



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, tap scheduled charging switch, set the start time ①, end time ② and repeat cycle ③, then tap **OK** to save the settings.
- After scheduled charging is set, powering off the vehicle before charging starts triggers a reminder on the infotainment touchscreen that scheduled charging has been set. Switch to immediate charging if you want.

REMINDER

- When the SOC reaches a critically low level, the vehicle is charged to a minimum level before scheduled charging begins.
- The vehicle's power consumption increases while waiting for the scheduled charging. It is normal for long waiting to result in a reduction of the vehicle's power and driving range.

Smart Charging

When the low-voltage battery detector detects that the low-voltage battery is too low, it can be charged by the high-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle has sat idle for an extended period, intelligent charging may be activated. This is not a vehicle issue.
- Power for intelligent charging comes from the battery pack, so it is normal that an SOC decrease might by noticed during the charge.

Charging Port Immobilizer System

In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft with the charging port immobilizer system. This function is disabled by default. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Smart Charging** → **Settings**.

- When the immobilizer is enabled, you can unlock the vehicle and unplug the

charging connector during charging in the following ways:

- With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
- Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.
- Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.

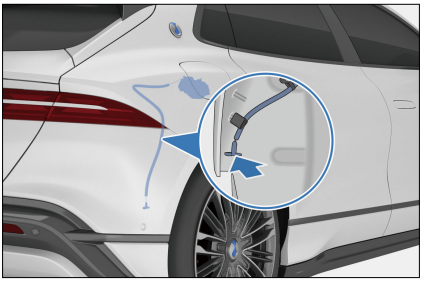
No.	Charging Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locked	No
2	Enabled	Enabled	Yes
3	Disabled	Locked	Yes
4	Disabled	Enabled	Yes

REMINDER

- After the charging connector is unlocked, it has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock after a while.
- To ensure the normal driving after charging, close the charge port door after pulling out the charging connector.

Emergency Unlocking of Charge Port

- When the charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobilizer system, unlock the charge port manually and unplug the charging connector.
- The electric lock latch is located at the right rear hubcap. Remove the right rear fender liner, and pull the latch to unlock the charging connector.



CAUTION

- The emergency unlocking function is usable for AC charging connectors only.

Discharging

This vehicle is equipped with vehicle to load (V2L) function.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.

WARNING

- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See ***P*** for safety warnings.
- Store the equipment in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.
- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the discharging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the device when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharging connection device, please refer to the precautions for charging equipment in ***P***.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- The V2L function is recommended only when the vehicle SOC is high.
- The V2L function is restricted when the vehicle SOC is low.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the V2L connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging/charging connector is recommended when the device is not used.

Discharging

1. Equipment

- Vehicle-to-load (V2L) equipment*: The device consists of a discharging connector, a power strip, a cable, and a discharge connector protective cover.
- Equipment specifications: a V2L discharging connection device that complies with local standards, with a maximum discharge power of 6 kW.

2. Starting discharging

- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charge port door, and then open the port door and cap.
- Check before discharging:
  - Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
  - Ensure the V2L connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.
  - Do not discharge if the above second or third condition is found; otherwise, short circuit or electric

shock so caused could lead to personal injuries.

- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Plug the V2L discharge device to the charge port. The power strip indicator lights up when the strip is powered and ready for use.
- Start discharging:
  - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

3. Stopping discharging

- End discharging:
  - Disconnect the load.
- Disconnect the discharge connection device:
  - With the vehicle unlocked, press the button on the discharging connector and then pull it out.
  - Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Organize the equipment:
  - Store the equipment properly after discharging.

Driving Range Display

- The driving range display mode can be adjusted in
- the infotainment touchscreen → → **Display** → **Instrument** → **Always Display Mileage**.
  - Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
  - Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorized by the system.
  - When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the Dynamic driving range display mode is set:
  - The driving range that is displayed after a full charge may vary, depending on calculations of the energy consumed the last time the vehicle is used.
  - The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode (ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, etc.) selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Target SOC Setting

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorize the last set target SOC.

REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will

REMINDER

drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.

- If the difference between the current SOC and the SOC balance value is large, the balancing time may be long.

Target SOC settings

Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. You can set this value by pulling down the shortcut menu from the top of the infotainment screen, or by navigating to → **Energy** → **Energy Manager** → **SOC**.

- When the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, to make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce the fuel consumption, a lower target SOC is recommended.
- When the destination is not convenient for vehicle charging, a higher target SOC is recommended to improve the driving experience.
- For a better driving and riding experience, the vehicle will automatically adjust the target SOC according to the altitude and ambient temperature.
- SAVE mode is related to the vehicle energy management priority:
  - SAVE: In the HEV mode, set the mandatory power protection to keep the priority power, and the SOC is as close as possible to the set value.

CAUTION

- SAVE mode works in HEV mode only, so it does not respond if turned on in EV mode. For a better driving experience, it is better

CAUTION

to switch to HEV mode before turning SAVE mode on.

In-Situ Electricity Generation

- During parking, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine will drive the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. During electricity generation, the engine speed is higher than the normal idle speed, which is normal. The in-situ electricity generation exits when the SOC is higher than a certain value.

Mode Memory

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous dynamic mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

Power Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, pressing the accelerator pedal while the SOC is below a certain level can trigger the power regeneration function.

REMINDER

- It is recommended not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time to generate power.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures,

REMINDER

the wattage of power generated is influenced by the charging wattage or the motor generating capacity, causing the value displayed on the instrument cluster to fluctuate.

Regenerative Braking Intensity Settings

- Two intensity modes are available: Standard and High. You can select the desired mode via the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Drive** → **Driving Settings** → **Regenerative Braking**.
- If no setting is made, the system will retain the factory default setting.
- The system has a memory function. Once set, the configured value will be used by default each time the vehicle is powered on.

Batteries

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- The vehicle is powered by a high-voltage battery that can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: using mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, using DC charging piles, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.
- The high-voltage battery is located under the vehicle floor, so be careful and slow down to avoid bumping when driving on bumpy or uneven roads. If bumping occurs, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new vehicles with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.
- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. When you find that the pure mileage of your vehicle has decreased, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for check. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- To keep the battery at its best, charge it fully with a AC charging adapter on a regular basis (at least once a week).
- If the vehicle is to be left sit for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If this period

will be over three months, charge the vehicle fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider, and the after-sales service provider will help the recycling organization assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. After the recycling is confirmed, the vehicle power battery will be disassembled by the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
3. The wasted battery will be returned to a recycling organization for further handling.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery (12 V)

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

When an new-energy vehicle is to be scrapped:

1. Take the vehicle to the DENZA recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Then take it to a recycling organization to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy vehicle owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

- **Wake-up using the driver's door microswitch**
  - The low-voltage battery features the dormant/wake-up function. The low-voltage battery may enter a dormant state after long-term parking and the vehicle cannot be remotely located or unlocked with the smart key. In that case, with the smart key nearby, press and hold the microswitch on the driver's door handle for over 3 seconds to wake up the battery and unlock the vehicle (see ***P60*** for details). Then power on the vehicle and keep this state ideally for more than one hour to charge the low-voltage battery.

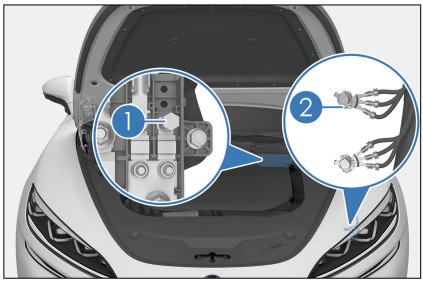
REMINDER

- The vehicle may goes dormant again if the low-voltage battery remains low. When you see a message indicator so on the instrument cluster, power on the

REMINDER

vehicle immediately to charge the low-voltage battery.

- **Wake-up by jump start**
  - When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked using the driver's door microswitch, it means that the low-voltage battery is exhausted. Use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use a 12 V power supply to start the vehicle by two specially designed cables for the jump start.
  - Jump starting can only be performed through the dedicated interface of the under-hood PDB. The connection terminals are shown in the illustration.



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started following the above steps, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- Never jump start another vehicle with this vehicle, because this may damage your low-voltage battery.
- Before you begin, check the battery conditions. Do not jump start the vehicle with freezing electrolyte.

WARNING

- Make sure the environment is well-ventilated and free from any fire sources.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that jump starting be performed under professional guidance due to the limited operating space and electrical risks in the under-hood PDB area.
- Use a 12–14.2 V jump-starting power supply and limit each jump-starting attempt to one minute, or the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquids to prevent water from entering.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.

- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 2,000 km in HEV-economic mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid speeding.
  - Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
  - Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
  - Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
  - During the break-in period, the proportion of driving in HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) shall not be less than 50%.

Trailer Towing

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. DENZA does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.
- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity (braked) (kg)	2000	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is braked
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked) (kg)	750	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load (kg)	200	Maximum vertical load on ball joint

1. The maximum allowed towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.

2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Front tires should be set to the standard tire pressure, while rear tires must be inflated at least 20 kPa above the standard pressure.
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these instances,

the vehicle speed must not exceed 100 km/h and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the tire pressure recommended for normal use.

- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- DENZA does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer, or from failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The hitch is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles as this may cause vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

WARNING

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolong the battery usage:

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for an extended period (over seven days), it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60%, or it will reduce high-voltage battery service life.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over 3 months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%–60% every three months. Failure to do so may result in over-discharge, which may lead to reduced battery performance or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.
- If the pure electric driving mileage appears to be "--" on the instrument cluster, signaling low SOC, charge the vehicle and avoid operating the vehicle with low SOC for a long time.

- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly.
- To maintain long-term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to an environment with a temperature above 60°C or below -30°C for over 24 hours.
- If the tray dented inward or there is scarification under the battery package tray, it is suggested to check it at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid operating the vehicle continuously for a long time whenever possible; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- If the instrument cluster malfunctions when driving, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

REMINDER

- If the battery level drops to 0, the vehicle must be recharged. If it is not recharged within seven days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by DENZA warranty.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits. Compared with under normal temperatures, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use unleaded gasoline that meets local standards.

CAUTION

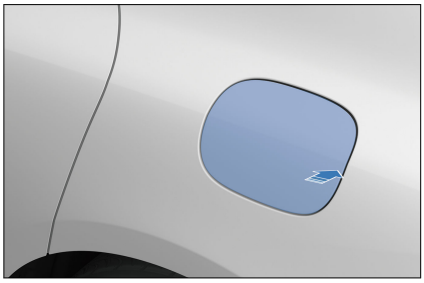
- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

Refueling

The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle. Park the vehicle with the left side close to the fuel pump.

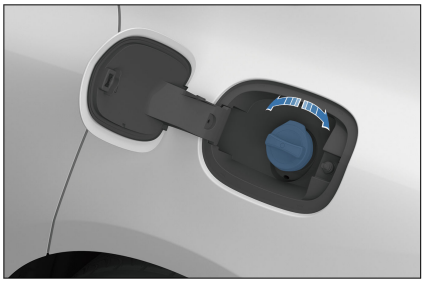
Turn off the vehicle before refueling.

1. Open the fuel door.



2. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it.

- Wait for 5-10 seconds to allow pressure to be released, then turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it. During this period, it is normal for the fuel filler cap to rotate freely. You may hear a hissing sound due to pressure release inside the fuel tank.



- If the fuel filler cap keeps rotating and cannot be removed, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Emergency opening of fuel filler cap: Pry open the safety plug at the center of the fuel filler cap handle. Insert a slender rod (such as a pen refill) into the hole along its axis until it cannot be inserted further, hold it in position, and turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it.

3. After refueling, close the fuel filler cap.

- After refueling, tighten the fuel filler cap clockwise. Press the DENZA logo button above the fuel door on the left side of the vehicle, and the fuel door will close automatically.

WARNING

- Fuel is highly flammable. Observe the following precautions during refueling:
  - Refuel outdoors whenever possible. Turn off the engine before refueling.
  - Do not smoke while refueling to prevent fire or explosion.
  - Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charging connector connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging the charging connector is not done by rule.
  - Do not remove the fuel filer cap immediately when opening it. In hot weather, if the fuel cap is removed too quickly, pressurized fuel may spray out and cause injury.

CAUTION

- Stop refueling after the nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not overfill the fuel tank. Leave space for fuel expansion due to temperature changes.
- After refueling, check that the fuel cap and fuel door are properly closed.

CAUTION

- If the fuel adding is not completed within 15 minutes after the fuel door is opened, please close the door, open it, and add fuel again, otherwise the reverse spray of oil may occur during refueling.
- If the fuel filler cap keeps rotating and cannot be removed, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Emergency opening of fuel filler cap: Pry open the plug at the center of the fuel filler cap handle. Insert a slender rod (such as a pen refill) into the hole along its axis until it cannot be inserted further, hold it in position, and turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it.

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving fuel is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and emergency braking consume more fuel.
  - Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Using cruise control under proper driving conditions for fuel saving.
  - The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in larger fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C to reduce fuel consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode for ventilation.
  - Make sure tire pressure is correct. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
  - Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
  - Do not stop to warm up the engine, and start driving slowly immediately after starting, which can make the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. Unless in extreme low temperature environment, you can keep a high idle speed by lightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEV-SPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after warming up.
  - When the engine is cold, do not run at a high speed or drive with the accelerator pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive slowly after starting.
  - Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
  - Avoid engine deceleration or overspeed with loads. Select the appropriate speed gear according to the road conditions.
  - Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency

braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.

- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed to save fuel.
- Keep the front wheels properly aligned. Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces.
- Use the glove box, interior panel and backrest pockets to place small items. Large items are to be placed in the trunk.
- Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.
- Please read the following information carefully before carrying luggage.

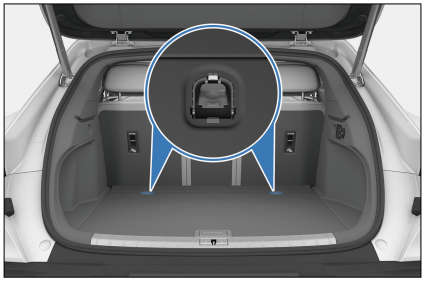
WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's normal operations.

Loading the Trunk

Luggage Anchors

- Place luggage evenly in the trunk, with heavier items at the bottom.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving.
- Do not stack items to a height taller than rear-row seatbacks.



REMINDER

- Luggage anchors used in the right way make storage easier.

Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

REMINDER

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been in an accident that may damage the underside of the vehicle.

WARNING

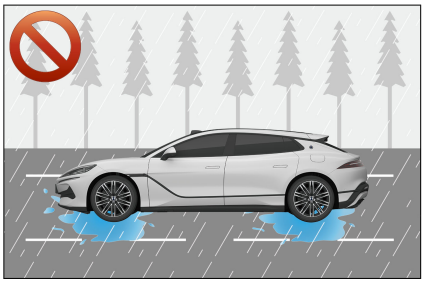
- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine shall be limited to the time when the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.
- When the trunk is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must be started with the trunk open, all windows should be lowered and the interior air control system should be adjusted according to the following prompts:

WARNING

- Choose "fresh air mode" mode.
- Select the "face/foot level" mode.
- The fan speed is set at "high RPM".

Wading into Water

- Before driving into flooded areas, check the water depth and make sure it does not exceed the vehicle's lower edge.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner, slow down, and press the accelerator pedal gently. Keep your foot on the pedal until you cross over, or the exhaust back pressure will suck water into the engine, causing serious damage.



- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Driving through deep water may wet brakes. To keep brakes dry, drive carefully and press the brake pedal gently.
- Never stop or turn off the vehicle in flooded areas.
- Do not wade into water unless necessary.

WARNING

- Drive carefully to avoid accident when there is any water or slurry on the brake disc surface, as this may increase the brake response time thus extending the braking distance.
- Carefully apply any wet brake, and remove ice or water on it.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road, Please ensure that high-voltage components remain dry to avoid exposure to water. Such damaged is not covered by the vehicle's warranty
- Never let water enter the engine. If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road, prevent water from entering the motor, otherwise the motor will be damaged seriously. Such damaged is not covered by the vehicle's warranty
- After the vehicle drives through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system may also be damaged seriously. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.
- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a DENZA authorized dealer or

WARNING

service provider for testing and troubleshooting.

- Do not drive the vehicle on the road where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tires.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- The reduced ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance due to water in high-voltage components pose a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- Do not press the accelerator pedal continuously. Otherwise, the drive motor will always run at a high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, fixed position regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, and light fixtures, may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
  - Other replacement wires or fuses in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road

sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.

- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses.
  - Fires often show early warning signs, such as abnormal noises or odors from the vehicle. If any abnormalities are detected, stop and turn off the vehicle immediately. Use a fire extinguisher to put out the fire if necessary.
  - Call a fire emergency number. Then contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider and your insurance provider.
- Look for the ignition point. If the front compartment is smoking, do not open the hood immediately. (Doing so will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the front compartment. Keeping the hood closed controls the fire so that the fire can be put out more easily.)
- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance like fire loss and theft coverage is recommended.

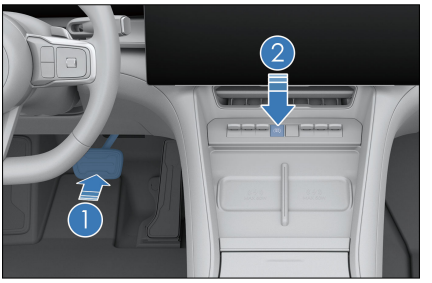
Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ① and press the START/STOP button ② at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to Drive or Reverse, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving the vehicle until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



Situations when the vehicle cannot be powered on

- The vehicle cannot power on in the following situations:
  - After you press the START/STOP button, if the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster, the key may not be in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - Even within the vehicle, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the floor, in the cup holder, in the trunk, or in the glove box.
- Pressing the START button may not enable the start function in the following situations:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the instrument cluster flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed, the key battery may have run out. Follow the descriptions in and replace the smart key battery as soon as possible.
  - The engine has been started repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine again.
  - Except for causes mentioned above, the smart access and start system also fails to work normally under some conditions due to different service environments.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies:

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Shift into Park or Neutral.
- The ignition must be off.
- Place the smart key inside the vehicle.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button for more than 15 seconds to start the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not touch the START/STOP button while driving.

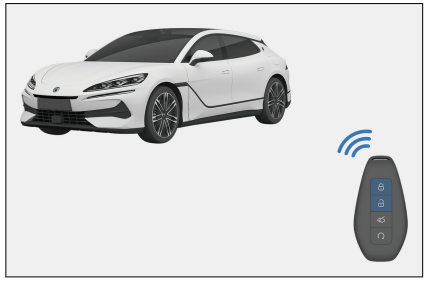
Remote Start

Before starting

- The ignition must be off.
- The vehicle must be in Park.
- The vehicle speed is below 5 km/h.

Remote Start with the Smart Key

- Press and hold the start/stop button on the smart key to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash three times.
- Press and hold the start/stop button on the smart key to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash two times.
- If there is no valid operation within the automatic power-off setting period, the vehicle powers off and turn signals flash twice.



Driving

Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be driven to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tires: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: Check for fluid deposits beneath it. These may indicate a leak of fuel, engine oil, coolant or other liquids. (It is, however, normal for a small pool of water to form, caused by the air conditioning system.)
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and check any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Check the exhaust system for leakage. In case any anomaly is found, have it repaired.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop it for 10 minutes, park the vehicle on the flat ground, and check the oil level.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

If everything is OK, just enjoy your driving.

Preparations Before Driving

- Check your surroundings before getting into vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Make sure all doors are closed.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Driving with Low Fuel Consumption

Fuel consumption and driving range are influenced by various factors. Adopt eco-driving practices and perform regular maintenance help enhance driving range, reduce fuel consumption, and contribute to environmental protection.

- Maintain economic mode driving where possible.
- Keep the vehicle in good condition.
  - Perform regular maintenance: Regular maintenance of the vehicle can ensure a longer lifespan and optimal economy for the vehicle.
  - Regularly check tire pressure: Check the tire pressure at least twice a month and before long trips. Adjust the tire pressure as necessary. Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance, which can increase both power consumption and fuel consumption, and accelerate tire wear.
- Use the economic speed as much as possible:
  - Maintaining the economic speed can effectively improve driving range and reduce fuel consumption. Excessively high or low speeds are not beneficial for fuel efficiency. Under safe conditions, try to keep your vehicle at the economic speed.
- Predictive driving:
  - Ensure driving safety;
  - Avoid unnecessary sudden acceleration and braking;
  - Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead;
  - When approaching a red light, release the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to coast to a stop.
  - Keep a steady speed.
- Use the energy recovery system properly
  - Under safe driving conditions, select an appropriate braking intensity based on different road conditions to match the vehicle's driving state. To fully utilize the energy recovery system, please apply gentle braking to decelerate and avoid abrupt stops.
- Reduce unnecessary in-vehicle items:
  - Additional weight increases energy consumption.
- Use the air conditioning system properly
  - The heating and cooling processes are highly energy-intensive, significantly reducing driving range and increasing fuel consumption. Reasonable use of the air conditioning system can effectively reduce both electricity and fuel consumption.
- Turn off unnecessary features:
  - Interior heating consumes a huge amount of electrical energy (e.g. seat heating* etc.) and should be switched off when not required.

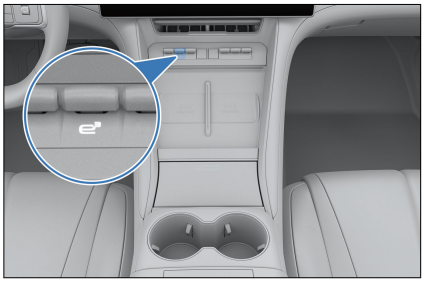
REMINDER

- During the break-in period, do not drive the vehicle under heavy loads or at a speed that exceeds the maximum allowed speed.
- It is recommended to accelerate gradually to reduce wear and tear caused by sudden acceleration.

e³

Entering the e³ App

- Press the e³ button on the center console to enter the e³ app.
- You can also tap **Applications** on the infotainment touchscreen to enter the e³ app.



Driving mode

Road Mode

- Normal mode: Comfort Mode balances both vehicle performance and fuel efficiency. The vehicle calibration is relatively balanced, with drive torque and energy consumption calibration set at moderate levels.
- Economy mode: In Eco Mode, the vehicle prioritizes fuel efficiency. The drive torque is tuned more gently, and the power response is smoother.
- Sport mode: In Sport Mode, the vehicle delivers optimal performance by optimizing driving force and torque, enhancing power response responsiveness.

Snow mode

- Snow mode optimizes the vehicle's traction, driving performance, and maneuverability on slippery roads, such as roads covered with grass, snow, ice, or gravel.
- For your safety, it is recommended to driver slower and press the accelerator pedal gently on slippery roads, even in snow mode.

Special mode

- Sport+ Mode This mode delivers an instant power surge to peak levels when activated from a standstill, enabling rapid 0-100 km/h acceleration.

CAUTION

- Please use a professional test track. Before and after using the sport+ mode, tire pressure, tire wear, brake pads, and nut torque must be checked.
- Before activating the sport+ mode, please carefully inspect the power battery, braking system, tire pressure, and other system conditions.
- Please be aware of road safety and people around.
- Sport+ mode disables or restricts certain vehicle functions, including some drivering assistance features.

Custom Mode

- The personalized mode lets users adjust driving settings based on road conditions, creating a more enjoyable experience.

CAUTION

- To ensure driving safety, it is essential to fully understand the meaning of each setting parameter and its impact on vehicle performance before using the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Certain custom combinations may not be suitable for real-world driving conditions. Please drive with caution.
- When the custom parameter combinations are incompatible, switch to the dedicated road mode.

Switching the Driving Mode

e³ app

- Press the e³ button or tap the e³ app icon on the infotainment touchscreen to enter the e³ app.

Mode switch

- Pull the mode switch on the center console to switch among NORMAL, ECO, and SPORT modes.

Drift Mode

- After Drift Mode is activated, the vehicle switches to rear-wheel drive. By depressing the accelerator pedal and applying counter-steering, the driver can quickly initiate and maintain a drift, enhancing driving enjoyment.
- Drift Mode is intended for use on flat, paved, non-public roads, such as dry or wet asphalt, dry or wet concrete, or compacted snow surfaces.
- Drift Mode must be activated when the vehicle is in Park. Ensure that all doors are closed and seat belts are fastened before use.

Entering Drift Mode

When the ignition is on, Drift Mode can be activated as follows:

- Open the e³ app and tap to enter Drift Mode.
- Before activation, ensure all doors are closed, seat belts are fastened, the tire pressure is between 220 and 350 kPa, the battery level is greater than 30%, and the tire tread condition is adequate.

Exiting Drift Mode

When the ignition is on, Drift Mode can be exited as follows:

- Normal exit:
  - Exit via the Drift Mode screen on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Automatic exit:
  - Drift Mode will automatically deactivate if a system fault is detected.

WARNING

- Drifting is an advanced driving maneuver that carries a risk of loss of control, which may result in vehicle damage or personal injury. Only use Drift Mode in a controlled, professional environment under expert guidance.
- Ensure all doors are closed, all occupants are properly seated and wearing seat belts. Ensure all occupants are in good physical condition and no children are allowed in the vehicle during drifting.
- During drifting, occupants may experience dizziness, nausea, or other discomfort. Control vehicle speed appropriately. If any discomfort occurs, stop drifting immediately and park the vehicle safely.
- Frequent use of Drift Mode may accelerate wear of vehicle components. To maintain optimal

WARNING

performance, perform regular inspections and maintenance.

- Failure to follow these instructions may result in injury or damage. The user assumes all responsibility and DENZA shall not be liable for any damages unless otherwise required by applicable laws and regulations.

CAUTION

- Pre-drift inspection: Check doors, seat belts, suspension system, power system (battery/motor), braking system, tires, and fasteners.
- Post-drift maintenance To ensure vehicle performance and safety, it is recommended to have the vehicle inspected and serviced at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider after each drifting session.
- Always ensure sufficient space and maintain a safe distance when drifting. Anticipate the vehicle's trajectory to protect both occupants and surrounding personnel.

high-speed tire blowout stability control

The high-speed tire blowout stability control function is designed for scenarios where the vehicle is traveling at high speed and a single tire blowout occurs. Once activated, it mitigates directional deviation and instability risks by implementing wheel-end torque stability control, assisting the driver in safely pulling over to the side of the road.

Activation

- When the following conditions are met, the function will automatically activate and take effect:
  - When the initial tire pressure is within the normal range and a single tire blowout occurs
  - The vehicle is in Drive.
  - Vehicle speed is not greater than 60 km/h.
  - Available driving modes include comfort, eco, and sport mode.
  - The vehicle is not undergoing sudden acceleration or abrupt steering wheel turns.

Deactivation

- Whenever the vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h, the function will exit.
- Some driver assistance functions (such as AEB) are activated, this function will exit.
- After the system detects driver interventions such as sudden acceleration or abrupt steering wheel input, the function will exit.

Situations where AEB cannot be used include:

- The road is bumpy, steep, or significantly undulating.
- The road is too curvy.

WARNING

- This function is an emergency avoidance assistance feature and cannot fully replace the driver’ s manual driving actions after a high-speed tire blowout. In the event of a tire blowout, always maintain continuous monitoring of the vehicle’ s condition and the surrounding environment. Comply with all

WARNING

traffic safety regulations and laws to prevent traffic accidents or other hazardous situations, and avoid unnecessary property damage, personal injury, or harm to occupants or others.

- Drivers should comply with local laws and regulations, traffic rules, and vehicle-related operation guidelines. DENZA shall not bear any liability for personal injury or property damage caused by factors not attributable to the vehicle' s own defects or malfunctions.
- In the event of a tire blowout, the driver should remain calm, hold the steering wheel firmly, gently press the brake pedal, safely pull over to the side of the road, and turn on the hazard warning lights. Then, in accordance with legal requirements, place the warning triangle at the appropriate position behind the vehicle and call for assistance.

USS

The USS applies a yaw moment in the same direction as the steering direction to the vehicle through the differential control of the torque at the left and right wheel ends combined with the rear wheel steering, thereby reducing the turning diameter of the vehicle, improving the flexibility of the vehicle and the ability of steering and turning around in a narrow space.

Activation conditions

When the following conditions are met, the USS will automatically activate and function when the steering wheel is fully turned in either direction:

- Available driving modes include comfort, eco, and sport mode.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- Speed range of the vehicle: 0~15km/h.

Activation

- To enable or disable USS, go to the infotainment touchscreen → **APP center** →**e³**→ PCT.
- When the USS function is turned on, the instrument illuminates the gray indicator.
- When the USS function is activated, the instrument illuminates a green indicator and the pad displays an animated prompt.
- When the function activation conditions are met and the power pedal and brake pedal are released from a standing start, the USS may be activated to reach the minimum steering radius.
- When the vehicle speed is > 15 km/h or the brake pedal is pressed deeply during function use, the function is deactivated but not switched off. When the activation conditions are met, the function is activated again.
- When the function fails, the USS function cannot be accessed, and the pad will give a text prompt "The current vehicle status is not satisfied, USS is not available".
- The USS has a power-on and power-off memory function. After the function is turned on, the function can be turned on automatically without clicking the USS switch on the infotainment touchscreen again.

Deactivation

- The user can exit this function through the USS switch in the e3 App.

- When the function fails, the USS function will automatically exit.

⚠ CAUTION

- During the use of this function, the steering wheel will feel heavier when it returns from the limit position.
- After this function is turned on, the TCS function may be triggered on some wet and slippery roads. When the TCS function is triggered, there will be a slight change in steering feel. Please hold the steering wheel with both hands during use.
- After this function is turned on, the turning diameter of the vehicle is reduced, and slight tire noise may be caused during steering, which is a normal phenomenon.
- This function is only applicable to cement and asphalt pavement. Please do not use this function on other pavements.
- Frequent use of this function will accelerate the wear and tear of the vehicle and related parts. Please check and maintain the state of the vehicle regularly.

PCT

The PCT function controls the rotation of the rear wheel to achieve the overall PCT effect of the vehicle by braking the left or right front wheel of the vehicle separately to make it a fulcrum wheel.

40/20000 This function can set the rotation fulcrum wheel of the vehicle, the rotation direction and angle of the vehicle, and the vehicle will stop automatically when it rotates to the specified position.

Activation conditions

- Before activating this function, ensure that the vehicle status, surroundings, and road conditions meet the following requirements. Otherwise, do not enable this function:
  - This function is only applicable to uniform and flat pavement (cement and asphalt pavement);
  - To use this function, it is necessary to ensure that the vehicle is located in an open area without obstacles such as other vehicles, pedestrians, animals, stone piers and shoulders. Do not use this function in bad weather (such as strong wind, rainstorm, fog, etc.).
  - The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened.
  - SOC is over 11%;
  - The PCT function can be entered when the vehicle speed is ⩽ 8 km/h, but it can only be activated when the vehicle is stationary;
  - The intelligent assistant driving functions are not activated.
  - The vehicle is in ECO, Sport mode.
  - The vehicle is not on the ramp.
  - The vehicle system temperature is normal.

Activation

When the ignition is on, Drift Mode can be activated as follows:

- To enable or disable PCT, go to the infotainment touchscreen → **APP center** → **e³** → PCT.
- Users can turn on the PCT function by activating the voice assistant and saying "Turn on PCT".

PCT procedure

- After the function is switched on, keep the vehicle stationary and activate the function as follows:
  - A rotating fulcrum wheel, a rotating direction and a rotating angle are arranged.
  - Tap the button on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Keep the steering wheel centered.
  - The vehicle is in Drive.
  - Release the brake pedal.

Deactivation

- When the battery power is less than 9%, this function will exit automatically.
- This function will exit when the vehicle speed is greater than 10km/h or the user clicks the exit button before clicking start.
- After clicking Start, the infotainment touch screen will prompt "Please engage D gear, hold the steering wheel tightly, release the brake and start to rotate". If the user fails to complete the operation within a certain period of time, the system will automatically terminate the activation process and exit this function. At this time, the infotainment touch screen will prompt "PCT has been terminated without following the prompt" .
- During the rotation of the vehicle, if the user depresses the brake pedal or clicks the stop button, the vehicle will stop rotating, and this function will exit.
- During the rotation of the vehicle, if the user clicks the button, the vehicle stops rotating and this function exits.
- During vehicle rotation, if the user rotates the steering wheel at an excessive angle, switches to a gear other than "D", or opens the door, this function will exit.
- During the rotation of the vehicle, if the user starts the intelligent auxiliary driving function, this function will exit.
- During the use of this function, if the system monitors that the vehicle status does not support the PCT anymore at present, it will prompt in the infotainment touch screen that "the current vehicle status is not satisfied, PCT has exited" and automatically exit this function. In this case, you can wait for a while and then try to open this function again. If it cannot be restored for a long time, please go to the authorized dealer of DENZA for maintenance.
- when using the function, if the system detects that the road surface is not used as required, it will prompt on the infotainment touchscreen that "the road surface conditions are not met, PCT has exited" and automatically exit this function.i In this case, you can wait for a while and then try to open this function again. If it cannot be restored for a long time, please go to the authorized dealer of DENZA for maintenance.
- When this function is disabled, the vehicle gear will automatically switch to the parking gear.

WARNING

- If this function is forcibly turned on under unacceptable conditions, or there is a risk of property damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury to the driver, please operate with caution.
- During the operation of this function, the driver and

WARNING

passengers may feel dizzy, nausea or other discomfort. Please stop the vehicle in time and control the operation status of this function in time.

- This function is only a U-turn assistance function and cannot replace the U-turn action operated by the driver of the vehicle. When using this function, please keep monitoring the vehicle status and surrounding conditions at all times to ensure that you can take over the control of the vehicle in time, pay attention to and abide by the laws and regulations on road traffic safety, so as to avoid traffic accidents or other dangerous situations and/or unnecessary property losses and personal casualties to drivers and passengers or others.
- Please ensure that all passengers in the vehicle are wearing seat belts, that the passengers are in good health, and that no minors are operating the vehicle. Otherwise, the user shall be responsible for the personal injury of the personnel in the vehicle caused by the use of PCT function, and DENZA shall not assume any responsibility unless otherwise mandatory by laws and regulations.
- This function does not support automatic braking. Please observe the surrounding environment at all times and step on the brake pedal to stop if necessary.

CAUTION

- Before using this function, make sure that the road surface is free of sharp objects to avoid damage to the tires.
- Before using this function, please ensure that the tire pressure of the vehicle is normal.
- Before using this function, please ensure that the light is sufficient. When the light is not good, the use of this function may cause a risk of collision.
- Before using this function, make sure that the doors, front compartment lid and trunk lid lid are closed.
- Do not use this function in bad weather (such as strong wind, rainstorm, fog, sandstorm, etc.).
- Do not use this function in sand, mountain and wading scenes.
- After the function is turned on, please note the following:
  - Continued vehicle rotation may cause the system to overheat. Allow the system to cool before attempting to use it. If the system is too hot, it is recommended that the system be cooled for more than 15 minutes before use.
  - The friction between the tire and the ground under the PCT function may cause noise and accelerated tire wear.
  - Frequent use of this function will accelerate the wear and tear of the vehicle and related parts. Please go to the authorized dealer of DENZA regularly to

CAUTION

check and maintain the vehicle status.

Intelligent Crab Walk (ICW)

Intelligent crab walk (ICW) enables diagonal vehicle movement by coordinating three electric motors and rear-wheel steering in the same direction, improving vehicle maneuverability.

This function is only applicable on flat surfaces such as concrete, asphalt, and dry epoxy flooring.

Activation conditions

- Before activating this function, ensure that the vehicle status, surroundings, and road conditions meet the following requirements. Otherwise, do not enable this function:
  - The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened.
  - Vehicle speed is not greater than 5 km/h.
  - The steering wheel is in the original position.

Activation

- You can tap **Application** → **e³ App** → **ICW** on the infotainment touchscreen to enable or disable ICW.

Operating Steps

- ICW operates as follows:
  - If the gear is not in Drive or Reverse, shift to Drive or Reverse.
  - Observe the crab walk trajectory displayed on the infotainment touchscreen. Slowly turn the steering wheel to adjust to a suitable crab walk angle.
  - Release the brake pedal to start ICW.
  - During driving, the current crab walk angle is displayed on the touchscreen and can be adjusted by turning the steering wheel.
    - With 21-inch tiers, the maximum crab walk angle is 8.5° in Drive and 5° in Reverse.
    - With 20-inch tiers, the maximum crab walk angle is 15° in Drive and 10° in Reverse.

Deactivation

- ICW can be exited by tapping the exit button on the upper-left corner of the touchscreen.
- ICW automatically deactivates under the following conditions:
  - Driver seat belt is unfastened.
  - Vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h.
  - Steering wheel is turned too quickly.
  - Steering angle is too large.
  - Steering wheel is turned excessively or frequently.
  - Emergency braking is detected.
  - System fault occurs.
- When the vehicle is in Drive gear and the crab walk angle exceeds the rear-wheel steering limit, the following conditions may prevent diagonal movement:
  - Vehicle speed is greater than 8 km/h.
  - Accelerator pedal is pressed.
  - Brake pedal is pressed.
  - Road conditions are unsuitable.

WARNING

- During operation, slight discomfort may be felt by occupants. Always pay attention to the surroundings and drive cautiously at low speed.
- The system may use rear-wheel differential torque to achieve angles beyond the rear-wheel steering limit. In such cases, noise and increased tire wear may occur.
- Ensure all occupants are properly seated and wearing seat belts. Ensure all occupants are in good physical condition and no children are allowed in the vehicle during operation. Failure to follow these instructions may result in injury or damage. The user assumes all responsibility and DENZA shall not be liable for any damages unless otherwise required by applicable laws and regulations.

CAUTION

- A green crab-shaped indicator is displayed in the upper area of the instrument cluster, showing the ICW status. When ICW is successfully activated, the indicator lights up; it turns off when ICW is exited.
- When ICW is activated and the vehicle gear is in Drive or Reverse, turning the steering wheel clockwise results in a positive crab walk angle. Turning the steering wheel counterclockwise results in a negative crab walk angle.
- Only when the vehicle gear is in Drive can ICW achieve a crab walk angle beyond the rear wheel steering limit.

CAUTION

- After activation, ICW imposes speed-dependent safety limits on the rear wheel steering angle; at higher speeds, crab walk capability is automatically restricted, which is normal.
- When the vehicle is in Reverse gear and the crab walk angle is within the maximum limit, turning the steering wheel clockwise moves the vehicle toward the rear-left, while turning it counterclockwise moves the vehicle toward the rear-right. When the crab walk angle is within the maximum limit, the vehicle trajectory returns to the normal steering path. Increasing the crab walk angle beyond the limit causes ICW to exit.
- After ICW is activated, the vehicle's steering response and power output may change; always monitor the vehicle trajectory and surrounding environment, and take control if necessary.
- When ICW is exited, the rear wheel steering returns from the crab walk posture to normal, and the vehicle gradually transitions from diagonal movement to normal steering; slight rear-end swing may occur during this process, which is normal, and the driver should maintain control of the vehicle.
- When replacing tires, it is recommended to have them replaced at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Using tires with dimensions different from the original specification may cause ICW to malfunction.

e³ parking

- e³ Parking integrates three-motor control technology, and in specific scenarios, combines with spiral turning capability to enable a one-step parking entry, significantly improving parking efficiency. e³ Parking is suitable for flat surfaces such as dry epoxy floors, cement, and asphalt.
- The system is capable of identifying parallel, perpendicular, and diagonal parking spots with well-defined, complete sport lines in good lighting conditions and parking spaces without lines but having another vehicle on one or both sides.
- Mechanical parking spaces are not supported.

CAUTION

- e³ Parking is a parking assistance function and cannot replace the driver's judgment or operation. The displayed objects may not reflect the real-world environment. Do not rely solely on the infotainment touchscreen. The driver is responsible for driving safety. It is essential to inspect the operating environment and ensure it is suitable and safe. Avoid over-reliance on the parking assist function.
- e³ Parking System has blind spots. In the event of a risk, it may fail to alert, issue false alerts, or delay alerts. Please note that you should not rely excessively on the e³ Parking System's warning information. In scenarios such as complete darkness, wall corners, or tight parking spots, the performance of the sensors may be limited, increasing the risk of the vehicle colliding with surrounding objects.
- When using the e³ parking function, please pay constant attention to the surroundings, including but not limited to children, small animals, and other thin, sharp, low, or overhead obstacles. When a potential risk of scraping or collision is detected, immediately and gently press the brake to take control of the vehicle to avoid safety risks.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away to gurantee safety.

How to Use

The following conditions must be met before using e³:

- e³ function has been switched on.
- The e³ spiral turning function is functioning properly.
- AEB functions normally

Parking into the space

1. The driver can enter the parking interface by pressing the parking button on center console, issuing voice commands, or clicking the e³ parking option within the e³ application. Then, drive at a speed less than 25km/h in D (Drive) or less than 5km/h in R (Reverse) to begin searching for parking spaces around.
2. The driver selects the desired parking space on the center console parking interface. Parking spaces that meet the e³ parking conditions will display the

e³ logo and a special parking space style.

3. After selecting a suitable parking space, the driver must apply the brakes and click the "Start Parking" button. Then, follow the system prompts to release the brakes and the steering wheel. The system takes control of the vehicle to execute an automated parking maneuver, utilizing its pivot turn capability to guide the vehicle into the designated parking space.
4. After the vehicle parks into the target space, it will automatically shift to Park gear and notify the driver via voice and text, then it automatically deactivating.

CAUTION

- When there is a speed bump in the area near the parking space, the e⁴ parking space will not be released.
- Do not use on paved brick, gravel, dirt roads, muddy ground, grass, or other uneven or non-uniform surfaces.
- Do not use on uneven surfaces. The parking spot will not be available on excessive slopes.
- Do not use in dim environments.
- Do not use e³ parking in parking spaces with stoppers.
- While rotating, avoid letting the wheels contact with ground locks or other low-profile obstacles.

REMINDER

- If the road grade exceeds the system's predefined threshold during parking, this function will switch to Automatic Parking Assistance.

REMINDER

- During parking, if the vehicle detects that the function cannot be used normally, it will switch to Automatic Parking Assist.

Pausing or resuming parking

- Pausing: Tap the pause button on the prompt area or press the brake pedal to pause parking
- Resuming: After parking pause, to resume parking, release the brake pedal and click the "Continue" button. Otherwise, the parking system will automatically deactivate if there is prolonged inactivity.

CAUTION

- The parking assist function will automatically exit if the system detects any of the following conditions during the parking process (including but not limited to):
  - If an obstacle is detected, the system will brake automatically. Remove the obstacle and click 'Continue' to safely resume parking.
- The conditions to initiate parking must be met before resuming parking.

Exiting parking

1. After pressing the brake pedal to pause the system, click the 'Exit' button located at the bottom of the parking interface to exit the parking function.
2. To exit the parking function, press the brake pedal to pause the system, then click the 'Exit' button located at the top of the parking interface.

WARNING

- For the limitations of the e^3 Parking function, refer to ***P131***.
- e^3 parking serves as a driver assistance only, the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- The above precautions do not cover all scenarios that may affect the normal operation of the e^3 parking assistance function, and many unforeseeable situations could also impact the parking assistance capability. The driver must continuously monitor the parking conditions and the surrounding environment, and carefully assess whether to use this function to ensure safe parking. In emergencies, the driver must pause and take control of the vehicle, otherwise serious property damage or personal injury may occur.
- Please strictly comply with local road traffic and other relevant laws and regulations when using the e^3 parking assistance function.

CAUTION

The parking assist function will automatically exit if the system detects any of the following conditions during the parking process (including but not limited to):

- Manual intervention (such as steering wheel, gear selector, and electronic parking brake).
- Parking system malfunction (including ultrasonic sensor failure, surround-view camera failure, radar failure, and automatic parking controller failure).

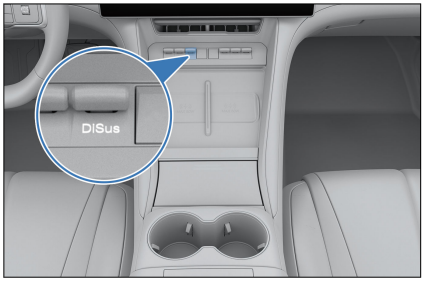
CAUTION

- Related system failure (braking system, driving system, steering system, gear system, multimedia system, active suspension system, remote control device, etc.).
- Exceeded parking condition limits (excessive total parking time, restricted space, parking pause timeout, excessive number of parking pauses, steep slope, wheel stuck, etc.).
- Path planning failure.
- Other functions activated (active safety functions, active suspension, trailer device, charging gun activation, etc.).
- Driving mode is not in a normal mode (Eco, Comfort, Sport).

DiSus*

DiSus-A*

- DiSus-A is an intelligent air suspension system that actively adjusts damping and ride height. By controlling air spring inflation/deflation and the current of the shock absorber solenoid valves, the system adjusts ride height and damping in real time to achieve dynamic body control.
- You can access the "DiSus" app by pushing the DiSus button upward.
- You can also access the app on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping **Application** → **DiSus**.



Driving Mode	Default Damping
NORMAL	Normal
SPORT	Sport
ECO	Normal
SNOW	Normal
Sport+	Sport+

Adjusting Suspension Height

Adjusting height manually

You can adjust the suspension height via the DiSus-A setting screen in the "DiSus" app. When the function is enabled, displays on the instrument cluster.

- The suspension height can be switched between three levels: standard (N), high (Hi) and low (Lo):
  - Standard (N): suitable for normal driving conditions.
  - High (Hi): suitable for unpaved or off-road surfaces.
  - Low (Lo): suitable for entering/exiting the vehicle and loading/unloading luggage.
- If a malfunction occurs and the height cannot be adjusted, the suspension fault warning light lights up on the instrument cluster. To ensure optimal vehicle performance, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Adjusting height based on speed

DiSus-A automatically adjusts the suspension height according to vehicle speed.

- In NORMAL/SPORT/ECO/SNOW modes:
  - If set to High, when speed exceeds 30 km/h, height automatically adjusts to Standard.
  - If set to Standard, when speed exceeds 132 km/h for 30 seconds, height lowers to Low; when speed drops below 110 km/h, height returns to Standard.
  - If set to Low, when speed exceeds 12 km/h, height returns to Standard.
- In SPORT mode:
  - If set to High, when speed exceeds 30 km/h, height automatically adjusts to Standard.
  - If set to Standard, when speed exceeds 90 km/h for 30 seconds,

height lowers to Low; when speed drops below 70 km/h, height returns to Standard.

- If set to Low, when speed exceeds 12 km/h, height returns to Standard.

- In Sport+ mode:
  - Suspension height does not respond to speed-based adjustment or manual adjustment.

Service Mode

- Activating/Deactivating manually
  - You can enable or disable Service Mode via the "DiSus" app. When enabled, the suspension is locked at the current height and the indicator  remains on.
- Activating/Deactivating automatically
  - When the vehicle is stationary and the suspension is hanging or abnormally lifted, Service Mode is automatically activated.

CAUTION

- Before lifting the vehicle with a hoist or jack, always enable Service Mode to prevent abnormal suspension posture caused by component replacement, which may lead to accidents.
- When vehicle speed exceeds 3 km/h, Service Mode is disabled automatically.
- When vehicle speed exceeds 8 km/h, Service Mode exits automatically.

Comfort Control

- You can switch comfort control modes via the "DiSus" app.
- The default mode is "Strong".

WARNING

- Before adjusting suspension height, ensure there are no people or obstacles above or below the vehicle to avoid accidents.
- Do not start the vehicle during suspension inspection or maintenance.

REMINDER

- Frequent adjustments may cause system overheating; wait until it cools down before further operation.
- Suspension adjustment is unavailable when a door is open, the vehicle is parked on a steep slope, or the brake pedal is deeply pressed.
- The suspension system operates within –40°C to 80°C. Outside this range, height adjustment may be unavailable.
- At low temperatures, suspension response time may increase.
- After changes in occupant or cargo load, close all doors to allow the system to automatically compensate for ride height.
- During driving, any deviation in suspension height will be automatically corrected, and the system will restore the default height for the current driving mode.

Rear Wheel Steering System

The rear wheel steering system is an active auxiliary steering mechanism on the rear axle, which can adjust the steering angle of the rear wheels on both sides according to the speed and steering wheel angle. On the basis of front wheel steering, it allows the vehicle to achieve four-wheel steering and ICW, and improves the vehicle's handling stability, driving safety and driving pleasure.

Status Description

- In order to reduce the power consumption of the whole vehicle, the rear wheel steering function is turned off in ultimate range mode.
- According to the driving mode set by the user, the rear wheel steering system will have different steering characteristics to adapt to different road conditions and the driving style preferred by the user.

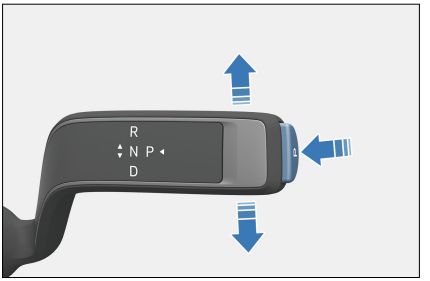
WARNING

- For vehicles with different tire configurations, the maximum steering angle and turning radius of the rear wheel will be different:
  - The rims and tires with the same specifications as the original vehicle must be used. If the rims and tires with inappropriate sizes are used, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may be reduced and the risk of accidents may be caused.
  - The use of third-party accessories, tires, wheels and other related components not approved by DENZA may damage the rear wheel steering system or other chassis parts of the vehicle and endanger the operation safety of the vehicle.
  - It is recommended to contact the DENZA dealer for the replacement of tires, wheels and other components.
- In case of rear wheel steering system failure:
  - The rear wheel steering function is temporarily unavailable.
  - The turning radius may become larger.
  - The vehicle may not be able to maintain a straight line.
- When the rear wheel steering system fails, please pay attention to the road and traffic conditions, park the vehicle safely on the roadside as soon as possible, and contact the professional service center approved by DENZA immediately.

Gear Shift Controls

The gear positions are marked on the gear shift lever.

After starting the vehicle, press the brake pedal and push the gear shift lever up or down to shift between gears.



- Park ("P")
  - Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop and press the "P" button to shift into Park.
- Drive ("D")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal and push the lever down two positions to shift into Drive.
- Reverse ("R")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal and push the lever up two positions to shift into Reverse.
- Neutral ("N")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal, move the lever up one position, and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.
  - When the vehicle is in Drive and the speed is below 10 km/h, push the selector up one position and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.
  - When the vehicle is in Reverse and the speed is below 10 km/h, push the selector down one position and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.

WARNING

- Do not coast downhill in Neutral. This damages the transmission and impaired safety.
- For safety considerations, do not step on the accelerator pedal while shifting gears. You cannot shift into Drive or Reverse with the accelerator pedal pressed.
- For safety considerations, never shift to Reverse or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving.

CAUTION

- After gear shifting, check the gear position indicator shown on the instrument cluster. If it is different from the gear selected, redo the gear shifting steps.
- When reversing, mind the surroundings to avoid accidents.
- When parking, ensure the parking brake has been engaged before leaving the vehicle.

REMINDER

- The gear selector returns to its middle position automatically after it is released.
- Pushing or pull the selector while the vehicle speed does not permit or the brake pedal is not being pressed cannot shift the gear. This is informed of on the instrument cluster.
- Shifting into Drive or Reverse is possible only when the OK indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

- When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, press the brake pedal and engage EPB via the shortcut menu on the infotainment touchscreen. Then, EPB applies appropriate parking force, and (P) on the instrument cluster flashes and then is steady

on, indicating that EPB is engaged. In addition, a text prompt "EPB activated" is displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Engaging EPB automatically when the ignition is switched off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB is engaged automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop and shift into Park and then EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the gear is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement

WARNING

triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

CAUTION

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope, to prevent it from rolling.
- Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance or frequent use of the function may lead to low SOC of low-voltage battery, resulting in the risk of vehicle slipping due to insufficient EPB clamping force. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from Park or Neutral into a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse. EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting

CAUTION

gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test. During this process, the EPB system does not respond to any operations.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and in Drive or Reverse and the Electronic Parking Brake function is enabled on the infotainment system, press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and Ⓟ turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- If braking fails or is blocked, press and hold the "P" button over 2 seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip, or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any accident.

CAUTION

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button for emergency braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, try to keep the vehicle under control before using the emergency braking function.

EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is designed for the situation when EPB is automatically engaged with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for towing, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the trailer mode to exit parking with EPB.

- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen.
- EPB trailer mode can be activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.
- If the vehicle fails and needs towing, see ***P265*** for recommended towing method.

- EPB trailer mode can exit when any of the following conditions is met:
  - Disable the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB performs a self-check. Ⓘ turns on and then off in several seconds on the instrument cluster. If the indicator does not light up, there may be a fault in the EPB or braking system. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, make sure the vehicle is in Park and EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.
- To prevent serious accidents, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB button when the vehicle is running.
- When the EPB is being engaged or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because the EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Auto Vehicle Hold (AVH): is activated automatically when the vehicle needs to be stationary on the road for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, enable AVH by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Settings**, then AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lights up on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.

AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state

with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- AVH has a memory function that retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
  - To activate the AVH function, shift into Drive and drive the vehicle normally. Then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

AVH exits

- When AVH runs normally, the following actions deactivate AVH and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park:
  - Opening the driver's door.
  - Unlocking the driver's seat belt.
  - Stopping the vehicle in Drive with EPB activated.
  - Pressing the AVH switch to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shift into Reverse and then AVH enters the slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Electric Rear Wing

Opening/Closing Power Rear Wing

- Select to open the vehicle control desktop through the infotainment touchscreen → **setting** → **display** → center screen to select the desktops of my car, and click the vehicle model on the desktop, then select the electric rear wing to activate or deactivate electric rear wing.
- When the electric rear wing is set to automatic mode, it can be opened and closed automatically according to the vehicle speed.
- The electric rear wing supports the driver's voice control, and the opening and closing of the electric rear wing can be set by voice in the driver's position.

WARNING

- When opening or closing the rear wing, please confirm the

WARNING

surrounding environment to avoid accidents.

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions of Power Rear Wing:
  - Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
  - If there are people nearby, close the tail wing after ensuring their safety.
  - Do not place an object under the rear wing for the purpose of testing the anti-pinch function, otherwise the rear wing mechanism may be damaged when the rear wing is closed.
  - The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape.
  - The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the power wing is fully closed.

CAUTION

- When the electric rear wing fails, you can still drive the vehicle normally, and the rear wing will not affect the driving performance of the vehicle.
- When entering the basement, please close the rear wing before washing the vehicle automatically to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Please clean area under the rear wing regularly to avoid the influence of foreign matters (ice, stones, branches, fallen leaves, etc.) on the rear wing mechanism,

CAUTION

resulting in abnormal opening/closing of the rear wing.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged objects or other road obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tires.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. When checking if they are wet, first ensure the surroundings are safe, then gently press the brake pedal. If you do not feel normal braking force, the brakes may be wet and need to be dried. While driving carefully, lightly press the brake pedal with the EPB engaged.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc

WARNING

overheating, which affects brake performance.

- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the engine or drive motor is running.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is running normally, the vehicle power output will be cut off for emergency power-off if the "START/STOP" button is pressed and held for over three seconds. At this time, it is recommended to press the hazard warning light button, coast along the roadside, and gradually slow down until the vehicle stops by pressing the brake pedal, engaging the EPB or hitting surrounding obstacles at a low speed.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not rest your feet on the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a long time during driving. Otherwise, this will cause overheating, wear and waste of electric energy.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the engine power system or electrical components.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle battery is low, you can use the on-board generator function. Refer to the charging instructions section for more information.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use the same type of coolant as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
  - Incorrect coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cables conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged in winter.
- Confirm that the engine oil viscosity is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be found in the BYD authorized dealer or service provider and the auto parts stores.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender liner.

- Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.

- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Winter Tires

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7 °C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are for emergency use only or for us in areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains must be installed on the drive wheels. Drive with extreme caution when using snow chains on icy or snowy roads. Some snow chains may damage the tires, wheels, suspension, or vehicle body. It is recommended to use thin snow chains with a thickness or diameter no greater than 5 mm to ensure adequate clearance between the tires and other components inside the wheel well.
- Read carefully the installing instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

CAUTION

- Driving speed must not exceed 30 km/h or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, and pay attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Install the chains symmetrically and remove them once you are on snowy or muddy roads.

CAUTION

- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.
- Engage EPB before installing snow chains.
- Install snow chains after turning off the vehicle and engaging the parking brake firmly. Do not Install snow chains when the tire pressure is insufficient
- When using snow chains, be careful not to damage the wheel rims.

Driver Assistance

Driver Assistance System

- The functions of driving assistance system are divided into three categories: driving assist, parking assist and.safety assist.
  - Driving assist provides adaptive cruise control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC) to support the driver during vehicle operation.
  - Parking assist provides parking distance control (PDC), surround view display (SDW), around view monitor (AVM), auto parking assist (APA), and e^3 parking assistance, enabling drivers to complete parking maneuvers safely.
  - Safety assist provides front, side, and rear safety assistance functions to help the driver maintain safe driving.

WARNING

- Before using the driver assistance system, the driver should carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and accompanying documents. The driver should fully understand the system-related information, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations, descriptions of each function, applicable scenarios, operating methods, and precautions. Strict compliance with the operating instructions is required; otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur. DENZA assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, related agreements and documents, unless otherwise mandated by law.
- The system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace your judgment and operation. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always keep their hands on the steering wheel, remain alert, and continuously monitor the surroundings for potential hazards. The driver must intervene or take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving. Failure to do so may result in accidents,

WARNING

property damage, or personal injury.

- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are intended to provide clear and concise instructions during system operation. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle and must continuously monitor the vehicle status, system operation, surrounding environment, and relevant targets. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur.
- The driver shall use the driver assistance system in accordance with local laws and regulations, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic data through the system. DENZA shall not bear any responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from the user's misuse, improper use, or unauthorized modification of the system functions or services. DENZA reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services provided to the user. Additionally, DENZA reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for use as evidence by authorized agencies with legal procedures.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. Although the system provides a certain level of assistance, it cannot address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver remains fully responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure compliance with local traffic laws and regulations at all times.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

- The vehicle is equipped with multiple sensors, including mmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor Cleaning and Maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the front windshield is free of dirt, frost, or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the windshield may affect system performance.
- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean the sensors as instructed. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if needed.

Common conditions causing radar or camera occlusion and recommended actions

- If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, melt it using

warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. Wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.

- If dust, mud spots, bird droppings, or similar contaminants adhere to the radar or camera surface, rinse with running water or windshield-specific cleaner until the dirt softens or detaches. Afterward, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
- If moisture or condensation forms on the sensor surface, wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
- When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, drive out of these areas as soon as possible. Sensor faults will clear automatically with no further action required.

Cleaning and maintenance tips

- When the windshield fogs or is likely to fog, activate the defogging function.
- Using a neutral cleaner (such as soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing with clean water and wipe it dry with a lint-free cloth.
- Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar area, as these may impair radar sensing performance.
- Do not use a cleaning brush, as sand or debris may scratch the lens housing or casing.
- Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause cracking.
- Do not wipe the lens housing forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating.
- Do not use metal or hard objects to scrape the contaminants, ice, or snow on the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
- Avoid spraying radars or cameras directly with high-pressure water.
- The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers. Keep the bumpers clean and avoid repainting, adding body kits, or installing metal or alloy (including electroplated) accessories, as they may affect radar performance.

Sensor Limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots.
  - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as misjudge distance or speed, or detect objects that are not present.
  - Radars and cameras may miss a target, such as partially or completely failing to identify vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles.
- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false or missed detections. See ***P146***

WARNING

- It is prohibited to use strong alkalis, strong acids, ammonia cleaners, bleach, cement cleaners, tar removers, glue removers,

WARNING

polishing agents, or paint removers on radar and camera lens housings and casings.

- Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install or use parts not approved by DENZA or make unapproved modifications.
- If the front windshield, fender, side mirror, bumper, or trunk lid need to be replaced, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to properly handle radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor is installed is damaged or impacted, causing misalignment or damage, the system may not operate properly. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider and have it properly inspected and addressed.
- After a radar or camera is replaced, perform calibration in time. Improper calibration may affect system functionality.
- Failure to follow these requirements may impair driving safety, resulting in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features utilize multi-sensor fusion algorithms. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including improper operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users.

Device issues (including user-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not yet calibrated or damaged or covered, for example, by ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metallic fences, or standing water on the road.
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windshield, side mirrors, body panels (for example, fenders and trunk lid), frame, or other components.
- A trailer hitch or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by non-standard accessories installed at the rear such as bike racks.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (increased paint thickness) or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, or car covers).
- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors as it may cause malfunctions.
- System performance may be reduced in some cases, including but not limited to the following:

- The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
- Tires are improperly inflated or worn out.
- Unqualified tires are installed.
- Snow chains are installed.
- A small spare tire or tire repair kit is used.
- The vehicle is heavily loaded.

- During cold starts, parking and driving assistance features are temporarily unavailable as the system requires initialization time. Please wait.

Environment of use

- Radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- Entering or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing late or insufficient braking.
- On sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, causing the system to accelerate the vehicle unexpectedly.
- The system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, traffic queue ends, toll booths, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing or snow mode.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
- The vehicle is operating in extreme weather, such as heavy rain, snow, fog, or smog, or on icy and slippery curves.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane markings are worn, blocked, covered, missing, overlapping, or temporarily changed due to construction.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, or nighttime).
- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is extremely hot or cold.
- Weight and width limit signs not in standard size as per local regulations may mistakenly be identified as speed limit signs.
- Unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered speed limit signs may not be recognized correctly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (for example manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (for example areas with traffic cones), or

areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.

- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- Close-proximity non-motorized vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, and pedestrians (especially children).
- Upturned vehicles, vehicles in extremely abnormal sizes, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
- Irregularly shaped obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, traffic barriers, and traffic cones, and other obstacles difficult for the system to identify.
- Vehicles have large areas of monotonous background colors.
- The traffic is complex where vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly, or there are on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll stations

WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- For safety, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all feature instructions to avoid unintended deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, with AEB activated, pressing the accelerator pedal forcefully may override emergency braking.
- Due to system limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or interventions while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Due to system limitations, the system may not accurately detect or respond to sudden changes in the surroundings. The driver must stay alert and intervene or take control of the vehicle when necessary (for example, by decelerating, braking, or steering). Failure to observe precautions above could result in accidents or personal injuries.

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

- Adaptive cruise control (ACC), an extension of traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed. If a vehicle is detected ahead, ACC adjusts the vehicle speed according to the set following distance.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be disabled. It becomes usable after being activated. You can set the ACC function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control. The driver must remain actively engaged with steering to ensure correct vehicle direction.

CAUTION

- If the system cannot identify lane markings, ACC cannot be activated, and the vehicle remains in driver's control.

ACC status

- Activation-ready： all ACC activation conditions are met.
- ACC activated: the system is operational, allowing the vehicle to cruise at the target speed or automatically adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead.
- Over speed: When you step the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, the vehicle responds to your action.
- When ACC cannot be activated or malfunctions, a function unavailable prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster in response to ACC activation attempts.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning	Description
Activation-ready		Indicator on	ACC can be activated but not activated yet in the current power cycle.	All ACC activation conditions are met.
Activation-ready		Indicator on	ACC can be activated, and had already been activated in the current power cycle. The last set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.	All ACC activation conditions are met.

Active		Indicator on	ACC is active. The set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.	Displays upon ACC activation
Overtake acceleration		Flash	ACC is in overtake acceleration The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.	Displays when the driver depresses the power pedal after ACC is activated
Unable to be activated/ faulty	/	Off	ACC cannot be activated.	The icon is not displayed when ACC cannot be activated or when a fault occurs.

How to Use

Activation conditions

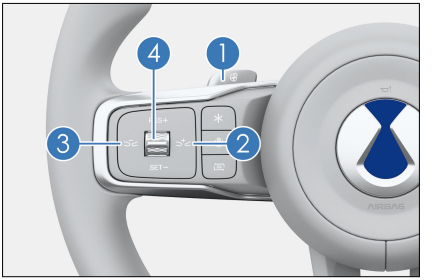
- EPB is released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is activated.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 150 km/h.
- If the vehicle is stationary and AVH is engaged, ACC can be activated.
- If the vehicle is moving (speed greater than 0) and the brake pedal is not pressed, ACC can be activated.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt or other fault promts on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.

Activation methods

- When is displayed on the instrument cluster, it indicates that ACC can be activated as follows. During each power cycle,toggle lever ① once to activate ACC.



Setting the target cruise speed

- When ACC is active, set the vehicle to a speed between 30 km/h and 150 km/h by moving button ④ up or down. Moving the button ④ briefly upward or downward increases or decreases the target cruise speed by 5 km/h each time, whereas holding it upward or downward increases or decreases the speed by 1 km/h continuously.

WARNING

- The ACC may not be able to immediately reduce the speed to the desired value. Do not over-rely on ACC to reduce the speed.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Setting time-based following distance

- Press ② and ③ to increase and decrease the time-based following distance. Across all levels, the faster the vehicle, the greater the distance.
- If the buttons are pressed when ACC is not activated, the system prompts to activate the driver assistance features first.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and speed up, slow down, brake, and start the vehicle accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle ahead is highlighted in blue. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level. (See "Setting the time-based following distance".)
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables the vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a short time (urban roads: ⩽ 30s，rural roads: ⩽4s) ,the vehicle can automatically resume following when the lead vehicle starts moving."
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time(urban roads: 30s–3 min, rural roads: 4s–3 min), the driver need to depress the accelerator pedal or move ④ upward to start the vehicle according to prompt messages.
  - If the stop exceeds 3 minutes, ACC exits and EPB is engaged. In that case, you will have to release EPB and depress the brake pedal to reactivate ACC.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffic.

WARNING

- ACC may not identify very close vehicles or pedestrian.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended traveling speed or direction. You must stay focused and take control of the vehicle in a timely manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a safe distance from the front vehicle. You are responsible for determining and keeping the safe following distance.
- Pressing the activation lever/ button or firmly pressing and then releasing the brake pedal while the vehicle is stationary exits ACC. This may cause the vehicle to move forward suddenly under idle power, potentially leading to an accident. Always pay attention to system prompts and traffic conditions. If unintended idle movement occurs, promptly take control of the vehicle to ensure safe driving.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Adjusting speed with ACC active

- When ACC is activated, the driver can override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal to initiate manual acceleration. During the driver's acceleration intervention, the vehicle will respond to the driver's operation in priority. The driving assistance system will no longer control speed or decelerate. The driver assumes full responsibility for safety during this period.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal increases current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal raises the target cruise speed.
- If you accelerate beyond the set speed, the set speed is increased to the real-time speed when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is greater than 80 km/h, the setting value of cruise speed will not be updated when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is less than 80km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is greater than 80km/h, the cruise speed is set to 80km/h when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is less than 80km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is less than 80km/h, the real-time speed is set as the cruise speed when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed and lever ④ is pushed downward at the same time, the current speed will be set as the new target cruise speed.
- If the speed exceeds 155 km/h or acceleration lasts longer than 5 minutes, ACC exits.

Exiting ACC

- If ACC is activated, you can exit the system by togglling lever ① once or depressing the brake pedal.

System limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The front mmWave radars and cameras are installed at the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their detection area can compromise system performance. In particular, if the sensor is covered completely, ACC exits and notify the driver via the instrument cluster. System functionality will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, motorized bicycle, motorcycle, non-standard vehicle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in late or no response to the target.
  - The front mmWave radar may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, causing it malfunction.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
  - Performance of front mmWave radars and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the ACC vehicle may not decelerate as expected or may decelerate late.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.

WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even when ACC is properly set, the driver must be able to stop the vehicle at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision

WARNING

prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on (see "Safety Assist" for details).

- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to detour around front targets that risk colliding with it, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle speed is greater than 80 km/h.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident involving injuries and property damage.

- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes* like tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain.
- ACC and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to improper operations):
    - The vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h.
    - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
    - Tire pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/traction control system activated, colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.
    - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
    - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
    - The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
  - Environment of use (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
    - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
    - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
    - Mountain roads and rural roads
    - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections
    - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
    - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails

- Curbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles

- Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
  - The vehicle is at a congested intersection.
  - Pedestrians and vehicles weave through the intersection.
  - Pedestrians, cyclists, or animals from blind spots appear suddenly.
  - The vehicle ahead brake suddenly.
  - Adjacent large vehicle merges into your lane.
  - Pedestrians or other vehicles cut in, force their way through traffic, merge at a sharp angle, or travel in the wrong direction.
  - There are stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, or irregularly shaped vehicles, such as engineering vehicles, flatbed trucks, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
  - Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle opens any door or things fall off.

- Other issues
  - Include but are not limited to situations listed under General System Limitations.

WARNING

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- In some cases, such as when the preceding vehicle is moving too slowly, when your vehicle changes lanes too quickly, or when the distance from the preceding vehicle is too short, the system may not have sufficient time to reduce the speed or issue timely warnings. In such cases, the driver must respond appropriately and promptly.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot detect all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.
- ACC may brake the vehicle if it is too close to the adjacent lane or if the adjacent vehicle is too close to your lane.

WARNING

- Vehicles coming into the ACC vehicle's lane and entering the detection range of the front cameras are identified as target vehicles, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).
- When the vehicle stops as it follows a vehicle ahead, in rare cases, the system does not recognize the end of the vehicle ahead (for example, the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or a rear bumper). This means a suitable following distance cannot be kept and you must stay alert and ready to brake at any time.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the front cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted an system error.

WARNING

CAUTION

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety and must always mind surrounding traffic.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*

- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between 0 and 150 km/h. It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route, keep both hands on the steering wheel, and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, you must be prepared to take immediate corrective actions to ensure safe driving. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required,

and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

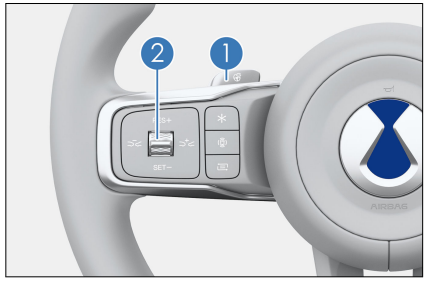
ICC indicators

Indicator	Display Status	Definition	Description
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated	ICC conditions met
	Flash	ICC stops (no steering assist)	Driver steering input detected
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating	/
	Flash	The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard when ICC is activatd	The driver presses the accelerator pedal

How to Use

Activating ICC

- ICC is available for activation when displays on the instrument cluster.
- How to use
  - Enable or disable ICC on the infotainment touchscreen → → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - Check whether is displayed on the instrument cluster at any of the following conditions.
    - Operate within well-defined lane markings.
    - The vehicle is in Drive.
  - Press lever ① once to activate ICC.
  - displays on the instrument cluster when ICC is successfully activated. The target speed will be shown in .



Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centered in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruise, following, and the adjustment of target speed and time-based following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and time-based following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.

WARNING

- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards, so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In situations such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- Pressing the lever or firmly pressing and then releasing the brake pedal while the vehicle is stationary exits ICC. This may cause the vehicle to move forward suddenly under idle power, potentially leading to an accident. Always pay attention to system prompts and traffic conditions. If unintended idle movement occurs, promptly take control of the vehicle to ensure safe driving.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.

Driver disengagement alert and safe stop

- If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time when ICC is active, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.
- After the third-level disengagement alert is triggered, the vehicle will automatically exit ICC, decelerate to a stop within the lane, and activate the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions interrupt the automatic stop:
  - Turn off the double flash or turn on the left and right turn signals;
  - Pressing the accelerator pedal while turning the steering wheel
  - Canceling ICC using the steering wheel control button or lever.
  - Shifting to Park.
- If the third-level disengagement alert is triggered three times within the same power cycle, ICC will be disabled. The function can be reactivated only after the vehicle is turned off and back on again.

Speed adjustment on curve

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- You can enable or disable the function on the central infotainment touchscreen → → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**. The function is disabled by default.
- With this feature switched on and ACC active, the vehicle decelerates as appropriate for the curvature before entering a curve for driving safety and comfort.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately when ICC is just activated. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.

WARNING

- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in backlight, at sunset, on snow-covered roads or roads with heavily worn lane markings, and under other similar situations.
- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.

CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned and centered in lane, and no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail at intersections. Try activating ICC after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

Parking Assist

Parking Assist System

- The parking assist system includes park distance control (PDC) and side distance warning (SDW).
- When the vehicle encounters obstacles while reversing, parking, or driving in narrow spaces, PDC uses ultrasonic sensors to measure the distance between the vehicle and obstacles. Visual warnings are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen and instrument cluster, accompanied by audible alerts to inform the driver of the distance to obstacles. SDW calculates the vehicle trajectory in real time based on front and rear sensor data, tracks nearby obstacles, and provides visual warnings.

Sensor Layout

① ⑥ Front side sensors*

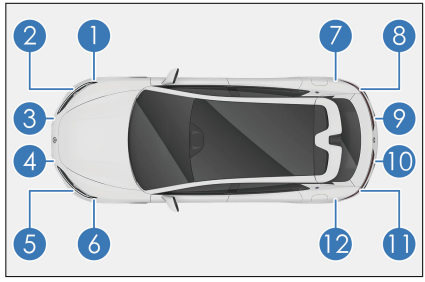
② ⑤ Front outer sensors*

③ ④ Front center sensors*

⑦ ⑫ Rear side sensors*

⑧ ⑪ Rear outer sensors*

⑨ ⑩ Rear center sensors*



How to Use

- You can enable or disable the PDC warning sound by pressing on the infotainment touchscreen.

REMINDER

- If PDC is turned off, the warning sound will automatically be re-enabled after the vehicle is powered on again and the gear

REMINDER

is shifted from a non-Reverse position to Reverse.

System activation

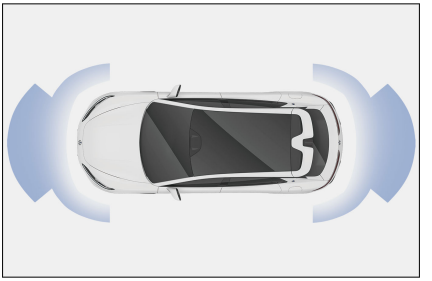
- When the vehicle is powered on and shifted from Park to Reverse, or from Reverse to Drive, both front and rear sensors are activated.
- When shifting from Park to Drive, only the front sensors are active and the rear sensors remain on standby.
- In Park, the system remains on standby.
- In Neutral, the system maintains the status of the previous gear.
- The operating speed range of the system is 0–10 km/h.

CAUTION

- When the system is activated and the vehicle remains stationary for a period of time, the PDC warning sound is muted to reduce disturbance. The warning sound resumes when the vehicle moves again or when an obstacle approaches.
- When the system is active and the vehicle travels within the operating speed range for a certain distance, the detection range may change. Drive with caution.

Visual and audible warnings

- When the system detects an obstacle, the infotainment touchscreen and instrument cluster display its position and distance using graphical indicators and numerical values, accompanied by audible alerts.
- The detection range of working sensors:
  - Maximum detection range (front and rear, all sensors active): 1200 mm.
  - Maximum detection range (side): 600 mm.
- The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. The sensors have a limited range. Check the vehicle surroundings before reversing slowly.



PDC warning examples (Reverse gear)

Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
Low collision risk		Slow beeps
Medium collision risk		Sharp beeps

Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
High collision risk		Continuous

SDW working examples

Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
Medium collision risk		/
High collision risk		/

CAUTION

- Warning distances may vary depending on the selected gear. Drive with caution.
- If the system malfunctions, a message such as "Parking sensor temporarily unavailable" will be displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The parking assist system cannot operate when the vehicle is in wading mode*, deep snow mode*, maximum range mode*, car wash mode*, or driver assistance energy saving mode.
- If warnings persist when no obstacles are present, have the vehicle inspected by a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- The parking assist system may not function properly, may fail to warn, or may generate false warnings under the following conditions (including but not limited to):
  - The radars are dirty or misplaced.
  - The vehicle is driving under extreme weather, such as rain or snow.
  - The radars are blocked by objects such as leaves, mud, water, ice, covers, deformed license plates, or license plate frames.
- The following obstacles (including but not limited to) may affect the performance of the parking assist system due to factors such as their material and shape, which may result in missed, delayed, or false warnings:
  - Thin, small, low, or suspended objects such as cables, chains, edges, low curbs, or hanging objects.
  - Sound-absorbing materials such as snow, or soft fabrics.
  - Road transitions such as slopes, joints, speed bumps, manhole covers causing false alerts.
  - Obstacles in sensor blind spots or too close to the vehicle.
  - Moving objects such as pedestrians, children, or two-wheelers.
  - Ultrasonic interference from the surrounding environment.
  - Vehicles equipped with external protective or towing devices.

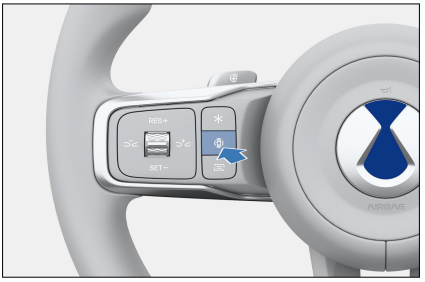
- Vehicles with excessive speed.

WARNING

- Do not install accessories such as bicycle racks or protective devices near the sensors, as this may affect system performance.
- Do not apply films, repaint, install wraps, or coatings in sensor areas, as this may affect system performance.
- Due to detection limitations, obstacles may not be detected in all situations.
- The parking assist system is only used for assistance rather than substitution of your personal judgment. Always pay attention to the surroundings and do not rely solely on this system. Failure to do so may result in property damage, injury, or death.

Around View Monitor (AVM) System

- The Around View Monitor (AVM) provides a 360° bird’ s-eye view of the vehicle’ s surroundings. It helps the driver observe the area around the vehicle, reduces blind spots, and enhances safety and convenience when reversing, parking, or maneuvering in narrow spaces.
- With the ignition switched on, tap Vehicle View on the infotainment system homepage, press the button on the steering wheel or using voice command to access AVM.
- Shift into Reverse and the AVM screen is automatically displayed.



- Switch viewing angles (front, rear, left, right, or top view) via the on-screen interface.
- Tap the vehicle model icon to enable or disable transparent view.
- Tap the to switch to wheel close-up dual view.
- Tap the to turn on or off parking sensor alert sounds.
- Swipe on the front or rear view interface to enter three-view mode; swipe down to return to the front or single-view mode.
- The Floating Window image can be enabled in the image settings to display a small overlay window for blind spot assistance.

WARNING

- The transparent AVM function generates the underbody view through algorithm-based estimation and filling; the image is not real-time. The function is intended only for assisting observation of the underbody during parking or low-speed driving. If it is necessary to inspect foreign objects or other hazardous conditions under the vehicle, use safer alternative methods.
- When the vehicle is moving slowly, the transparent AVM

WARNING

feature is affected by speed changes and repeated stops, causing misalignment between the images below the vehicle and those outside.

- The system is for parking/driving assistance only. Due to blind spots around the front and rear of the vehicle, relying solely on this system for parking or driving is unsafe. The driver must observe the surroundings by other means during parking or driving to avoid accidents.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras; so objects displayed on the screen may appear distorted compared to actual objects. Do not use the AVM system when the exterior mirrors are not fully deployed. When using the AVM system, ensure that all doors are fully closed.
- The distance to objects displayed on the AVM screen may differ from the driver' s perception, especially when objects are close to the vehicle. The driver should use multiple methods to judge distance.
- Cameras are installed above the front grille, side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Ensure that the cameras are free from obstruction, malfunction, or damage when using the system.
- To prevent impairing camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.

WARNING

- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the around view button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the around view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- The AVM system is only a driver assistance function. The camera field of view is limited and cannot detect obstacles outside its range. The driver is fully responsible for safe driving at all times. Always ensure that the surrounding environment is safe during parking and driving.

Auto Parking Assist (APA)*

- Auto parking assist (APA) helps manoeuvre the vehicle into or out of the parking spot by using sensors such as cameras, ultrasonic radars, and LiDARs to detect parking spots and obstacles. This feature is enabled by default.
- The system is capable of identifying parallel, perpendicular, and diagonal parking spots with well-defined, complete sport lines in good lighting conditions and parking spaces without lines but having another vehicle on one or both sides. In the absence of parking lines, you can also park the vehicle by using the optional parking space feature.
- Mechanical parking spaces are not supported.

Function Settings

- On the APA screen on the infotainment touchscreen, tap ⬡ to access parking speed mode settings (Speedy, Standard, and Comfort).
- See the table below for details of these modes.

Parking speed settings*	Speed modes: APA offers three mode options, that is Speedy, Standard, and Comfort. Acceleration and deceleration is more obvious and the supported upper speed limit is higher in speedy mode. You can select the desired mode, but standard mode is more recommended. Take extra caution to choose the right parking speed. You are supposed to remain aware of the surroundings and immediately stop parking and take over vehicle in the presence of risks.

WARNING

- APA serves as a driver assistance feature only and is not a replacement of your visual inspection. Do not rely solely on images displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, which may not reflect the real-world environment. Drive responsibly. It is essential to verify that the operating environment of the system is suitable and safe and avoid over-reliance on APA.
- The steering wheel may rotate quickly during parking. Mind its operation so as to prevent hurting your hands and ensure the possibility to take over the vehicle in an emergency.
- The system has detection blind spots. In case of risk, it may fail to provide warnings, provide false warnings, or issue delayed warnings, and cannot replace the driver's observation of the surroundings. Do not over-rely on the system warnings.
- Sensor performance may be constrained in tight parking spaces, such as on a narrow

WARNING

street, corner, or bend, risking collision with other vehicles or objects around. For your safety, brake immediately once a scratch or collision is possible.

- While using APA, keep an eye on the surroundings, especially children, animals, and slim, sharp, short, or suspended obstacles. For your safety, brake immediately once a scratch or collision is possible.
- Many unforeseen situations may affect parking performance. Keep in mind that as a driver assistance feature, APA cannot replace your correct maneuvering of the vehicle and you must always be ready to override and take control.
- Always remain alert to any possible danger around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident involving injuries and property damage.

Parking into the space

- The system searches for a safe, suitable parking space while the vehicle is moving forward at below 25 km/h or is reversing at below 5 km/h.

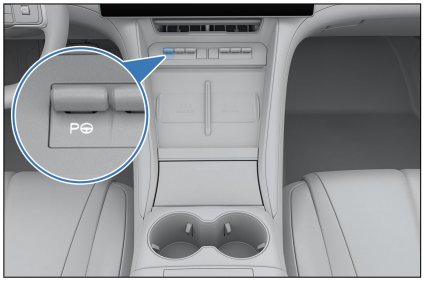
CAUTION

- In some situations, misidentification or missed detection is possible:
  - When a perpendicular or parallel parking space is occupied by a vehicle that is deeply parked, the system may mistakenly identify it as an available parking space.
  - The lateral trim strips on other vehicles may be mistaken for a part of the parking lines on the ground such that the area is misidentified as an available parking space.
  - Non-parking areas such as roads, access points, and bushes may be mistaken as available parking spaces.
  - Use your own judgment for parking spaces that the system may not be able to determine as legally valid and safe for use. These may include disabled-only parking spaces, parking spots marked with "no parking" signs, no-parking lines, women-only parking spaces, or spaces with specific vehicle orientation requirements.
  - The system may mistake ground markings, graffiti, or red or yellow tiles for an "unlocked parking space lock" sign, thereby regarding the parking space as an unavailable one.

CAUTION

- Parking spaces in special environmental conditions may be missed out, such as those involving shadows, reflections, cracks, stains, graffiti, blurred or incomplete parking lines, or grassy areas with steps, tiled parking spaces, corner-point parking spaces, or parking spaces with dense shrubs behind or around.
- APA operation requires sufficient space around the vehicle. Special parking maneuvers (such as head-in parking or offset parking) have stricter space requirements. Limited space may result in failure to complete parking or an insufficient offset after parking.
- Cases listed here do not encompass all possible scenarios of misidentification or missed detection of APA. Do not be over-reliant on the system. Instead, always keep an eye on the surroundings of the vehicle to verify whether parking is feasible.

- Access the APA screen on the infotainment touchscreen in any of the following ways:
  - Press the physical APA button.
  - On the steering wheel, press the custom button ✳. (You can hold the button to check if the button has been set as APA button.)



- Shift into Reverse after a complete stop. Note the use of this way requires that the reverse gear linkage feature* on the APA screen has been toggled on and that an available parking space has been detected.
- wake up the voice assistant and say commands such as "Activate APA." or "Activate parking."
- On the AVM screen, tap the APA button .
- Brake the vehicle, then wait until the vehicle is fully stopped before selecting an available parking space on the infotainment touchscreen.

Icon	Definition
	Unavailable parking space
	Available parking space
	Available but narrow parking space
	Selected parking space
	Selected parking space. Tap to switch between front-in parking or back-in parking.

- For parking spaces with , you can tap the icon to switch between front-in parking or back-in parking. Other parking spaces do not support this operation.
- If there is no parking lines, select a parking space manually:
  - On the APA screen, while keeping the vehicle stationary (for example by shifting into Park or by pressing and holding the brake pedal), tap the manual selection button in the image area to display the parking area box.
  - Position the parking area box at a location that is safe and suitable to park: Select the parking type (parallel, perpendicular, or diagonal); drag the box to change its position; or use the rotation icon to fine-tune the angle.
  - After the adjustment, wait for the box to turn blue, which means that the

position is confirmed as parkable. Otherwise, reposition the box to find a suitable area.

- You can also follow on-screen instructions to select left or right parking. However, this action is only valid for back-in parking and applies exclusively to perpendicular, diagonal, and space-type parking spots—not to parallel parking or parking into manually selected spaces.
- After selecting a valid parking space, be sure to press and hold the brake, and tap "Start Parking". Then release the brake pedal and the steering wheel as prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. The system controls the vehicle to start parking. Mind the surroundings and vehicle conditions throughout the parking process to ensure safety.
- When parking is complete, the vehicle is shifted to Park and voice and visible prompts are given to inform of so. APA will deactivate itself after that.

WARNING

- Before parking, verify that the parking space is free of obstacles, including bicycles, traffic cones, stones, thin poles, wire fences, and irregularly shaped objects such as tow bars, cardboard boxes, unlocked parking locks, potholes, and steps.
- To park into a manually select parking space, position the parking box in a safe, unobstructed location. Avoid confined spaces, uneven ground, mechanical parking spaces, and areas near steps or cliffs or containing other objects—these may pose restrictions on APA functionality or safety risks.

WARNING

- The steering wheel may rotate quickly during parking. Mind its operation so as to prevent hurting your hands and ensure the possibility to take over the vehicle in an emergency.
- During the parking maneuver, the vehicle may temporarily occupy adjacent lanes. pay close attention to traffics around and intervene as necessary to pause or stop the parking maneuver.
- Side mirrors automatically fold in before the system maneuver the vehicle into a narrow perpendicular or diagonal space.
- It is recommended to rest your right foot on the brake pedal throughout the parking process so that you can brake the vehicle immediately when noticing potential danger.
- Always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene whenever necessary.
- To ensure parking safety, you must bring the vehicle to a complete stop before selecting and initiating parking at a suitable space.
- For effective screen operation, use the pad of your finger to tap **Start Parking** on the infotainment touchscreen. Tapping or swiping with fingertips, nail art, or gloves may prevent system response, resulting in failure to activate the parking control state.
- Unintended vehicle roll-back may occur if, after parking space selection, the brake is released before a valid touch on the

WARNING

"Start Parking" button. The driver must tap "Start Parking" to initiate parking. After activation, the central touchscreen shows: "Parking started. Please release the brake pedal and steering wheel." A voice prompt will announce: "Parking started. Please pay attention to the surroundings." If roll-back is noticed or the warning is given ("Brake. Parking not started yet." in the form of voice and message prompts), immediately intervene, for example, by braking or steering to ensure safety.

- While APA is in operation, override and take control of the vehicle (for example, by braking or steering) for example, by braking or steering to ensure safety.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident involving injuries and property damage.

Steering out of the space

- After starting the vehicle in a parking space, access the APA screen by using the APA button , voice command, or other ways as instructed above.
- Follow on-screen prompts to select the direction to exit.

CAUTION

- When selecting the exit direction, the driver must ensure the direction is safe and available, and follow the traffic flow in the parking area.

CAUTION

- The arrow direction indicates the orientation the vehicle's front will face after the exit maneuver.

- After selecting the direction, press and hold the brake pedal, and tap "Start Exit". Then release the brake pedal and the steering wheel as prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. The system controls the vehicle to steer out of the parking space. Mind the surroundings and vehicle conditions throughout the exit process to ensure safety.

WARNING

- For effective screen operation, use the pad of your finger to tap **Start Exit** on the infotainment touchscreen. Tapping or swiping with fingertips, nail art, or gloves may prevent system response, resulting in failure to activate the parking control state.
- Unintended vehicle roll-back may occur if, after parking space selection, the brake is released before a valid touch on the "Start Parking" button. The driver must tap "Start Parking" to initiate parking. After activation, the central touchscreen shows: "Parking started. Please release the brake pedal and steering wheel." A voice prompt will announce: "Parking started. Please pay attention to the surroundings." If roll-back is noticed or the warning is given ("Brake. Parking not started yet." in the form of voice and message prompts), immediately intervene, for example, by braking or steering to ensure safety.

WARNING

- While APA is in operation, override and take control of the vehicle (for example, by braking or steering) whenever a scratch or collision is imminent or possible.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident involving injuries and property damage.

- When exit is complete, the vehicle is shifted to Park and voice and visible prompts are given to inform of so. APA will deactivate itself after that.

Waiting for, pausing, or resuming parking

- Waiting: If a moving obstacle with collision risk is detected during parking, the system will brake the vehicle. Once the risk is cleared within a certain period, parking will resume.
- Pausing: Tap the pause button on the prompt area or press the brake pedal to pause parking
- Resuming: If the parking pause conditions are not met, release the brake pedal and tap **Continue** in a timely manner to resume parking. Otherwise, the system will be timed out.

CAUTION

- In addition to manual pause of APA, the system pauses itself if any of the following situations is detected, including but not limited to:
  - A door, the hood, or the trunk lid is opened or the exterior mirrors are manually folded. After the above blocking conditions are cleared, tap "Continue" to resume parking.
- The conditions to initiate parking must be met before resuming parking.

Exiting parking

- After parking is paused, tap the Exit button on the APA interface to exit the parking function.

CAUTION

- In addition to manual APA deactivation, the system deactivates itself if any of the following situations is detected, including but not limited to:
  - Manual intervention (such as steering wheel, gear selector, and electronic parking brake).
  - Operation of other controls, such as Home button, AVM button on the touchscreen, physical APA button, and custom button
  - APA system faults, for example, issues with or obstruction of the ultrasonic sensor, AVM camera and LiDAR, and issues with the parking controller
  - Failure in related systems (such as the braking system, drive system, steering system, gear system, infotainment system, or remote control system).
  - Exceeded parking condition limits, such as, long parking time, confined space, parking pause timeout, waiting timeout, excessive number of parking pauses, steep slope, wheel

CAUTION

stuck, and parking speed limit exceeded

- Path planning failure.
- Activation of other functions (such as active safety functions, charging connector connection, or airbag deployment).
- The driving mode is not in a standard mode (Eco, Comfort, or Sport) or not in a personalized mode.

System Limitations

- Before using APA, ensure the following conditions are met:
  - Driving assistance functions are not enabled.
  - All doors, the hood, and the rear trunk are closed; the side mirrors are fully deployed (except when exiting a tight parking space); and the vehicle is not being charged.
  - Road slope is less than 5°.
  - The driver is seated in the driver's seat and maintains a clear line of sight within the parking area.
  - The LiDAR sensor, ultrasonic sensors, and cameras are functioning properly.
  - APA is free of faults, and all other vehicle actuators are functioning normally.
  - The vehicle is in a standard driving mode (Eco, Comfort, or Sport), and not in transport mode, car wash mode, creep mode, or other special driving scenarios.
- Always mind the surroundings and control the vehicle as necessary because some obstacles may not be detected. These include, but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility, such as in severe weather conditions (heavy rain, heavy snow, dense fog, heavy smog, sandstorms, etc.), or when the surrounding view is obstructed (such as exhaust fumes, splashing water, snow, or dust).
  - Low ambient light conditions, such as at dawn, dusk, nighttime, or in poorly lit parking areas.
  - Strong light interference, such as direct or angled sunlight on the camera, or interference from the headlights of oncoming or following vehicles.
  - The environment is extremely hot or cold.
  - Presence of nearby devices that generate signal interference or noise at the same frequency.
  - Electromagnetic interference, such as when electronic devices are in close contact with the physical key, which may prevent Bluetooth or RF signals from being transmitted.
- APA may not function correctly if vehicle sensors or structure are abnormal. Pay attention to conditions of the vehicle, including but not limited to:
  - LiDAR, millimeter-wave radar, ultrasonic radar, positioning system, or cameras are not calibrated, damaged, obstructed (for example, covered by ice, snow, water, frost, mud, or dust), or malfunctioning.
  - The vehicle is too close to the vehicle in front, blocking the camera's field of view.
  - The exterior mirrors are not properly unfolded.

- Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windshield, side mirrors, body panels (for example, fenders and trunk lid), frame, or other components.
- The vehicle is installed with snow chain.
- Tire pressure or size does not meet specifications (for example, a smaller spare tire or low tire pressure).
- Vehicle modifications that may interfere with APA, Attachments or modifications on the vehicle that may cause obstruction or interference, such as bicycle racks, side steps, oversized license plate frames, thick repainting, films covering sensors, or tape, stickers, or rubber coatings on the vehicle body.
- The vehicle is equipped with trailers or loaded with protruding cargo.

- Situations where APA may not function and special attention to surroundings is necessary include but are not limited to:
  - Parking spaces are too narrow to provide sufficient maneuvering space.
  - There are transparent glass walls or doors near the parking space.
  - The vehicle is parking in a mechanical parking space.
  - The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (for example manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (for example areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
  - The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.
- APA may not detect obstacles or respond to complex situations in a timely manner, thereby necessitating continued attention on the surrounding environment to brake as needed. Such situations include but are not limited to:
  - The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (for example manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (for example areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
  - The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.
- APA may not detect obstacles or respond to complex situations in a timely manner, thereby necessitating continued attention on the surrounding environment to take over the vehicle. Such situations include but are not limited to:
  - Complex traffic where vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or

other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly.

- Obstacles close to the parking space, such as pillars in blind spots, gates close to or partially intruding into the space, or damaged walls.
- Narrow parking spaces such as narrow roads, near corners, or extremely tight spaces.
- Pillars inside the parking space or close to the parking path.
- Overhanging obstacles nearby, such as elevated trucks, fire equipment boxes, hydrants, charging boxes, delivery boxes, protruding tow hooks, spare tires, outdoor AC units, hanging signs, pipes, beams, balconies, locks, or partially opened doors.
- Low or small obstacles nearby, such as stones, shrubs, curbs, flower beds, short walls (below 40 cm), narrow poles, wires, fences, rolling doors, tow bars, cartons, ground locks, wheel stops, or objects that poorly reflect radar signals.
- Downward steps, raised curbs, pits, drainage channels, or uneven ground nearby.
- Sharp obstacles nearby, such as right-angle pillars, polygonal columns, sharp wall edges, or ground-mounted fire or charging boxes.
- Height differences above the vehicle or parking space, which may cause roof collisions, such as ventilation ducts or sloped ceilings.
- Objects with special surfaces or structures nearby, such as sponge or foam materials, or reflective surfaces like glass, standing water, or reflective floor coatings.
- Nearby non-motorized vehicles at close range, including but not limited to bicycles, tricycles, motorcycles, as well as carts, strollers, small animals, and pedestrians (especially children).
- Irregular or atypical objects nearby, such as flatbed carts, road maintenance vehicles, vehicles blending into background colors, transparent furniture, traffic barriers, cones, or other objects that are difficult for the system to recognize.

WARNING

- APA serves an assistance feature only. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- The above precautions do not cover all scenarios that may affect the normal operation of APA, and many unforeseeable situations could also impact the parking assistance capability. The driver must continuously monitor the parking conditions and the surrounding environment, and carefully assess whether to use this function to ensure safe parking. In emergencies, the driver must pause and take control of the vehicle, otherwise serious property damage or personal injury may occur.
- All local traffic laws and regulations must be followed during the use of APA.

Forward Safety Assist

Front Collision Warning (FCW)*

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW)uses the front mmWave radar and the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts

the driver audibly and visually to take measures and avoid the collision risk.

Forward collision warning includes three subfunctions:

- Safe distance warning:
  - At 65–150 km/h, the system monitors the environment ahead in real-time. The safe distance warning is triggered if a short following distance is detected to have been kept for a long time.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a message is displayed to alert the driver.
- Pre-warning:
  - At 15-150 km/h, pre-warning is given in response to a risk of collision with the target ahead. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
  - The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, and a textual prompt is displayed to suggest the driver braking.
- Emergency warning:
  - At about 15–150 km/h, if the driver does not respond appropriately after the pre-warning and the collision risk increases, the system issues an emergency warning. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
  - This emergency warning is given in the form of an indicator and a textual braking prompt on the instrument cluster, a beep, and a brief braking reminder.

WARNING

- FCW is an assistance feature and its warning timing may be affected by many factors, including vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, and system latency. As a result, warnings may be delayed, missed, or triggered falsely. FCW can not replace your judgment and operation.

Function Settings

- Enable or disable the FCW in the infotainment touchscreen → **settings** → **ADAS** → Safety Assist.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - OFF: FCW is disabled.
  - Late: allows FCW to issue later-timed warnings.
  - Moderate: allows FCW to issue moderate-timed warnings.
  - Early: allows FCW to issue early-timed warnings.

System Limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or riders
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the your path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle runs under poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood or trunk is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is in motion.
  - The driver presses the brake pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, or decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected due to special clothing or occlusion.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
  - FCW may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates, or road signs.
  - The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. FCW

WARNING

is not a replacement for your judgment and vehicle control under any circumstances.

- If FCW gives an alarm, brake based on traffic conditions to slow down or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. FCW may not issue warnings due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary warnings in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger wrong warnings.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in any of the following situations:

WARNING

- The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
- Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
- The vehicle has experienced a collision.
- ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.

- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot issue warnings under all circumstances. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists.
- Contamination or obstruction may cause radar and front camera sensor blindness. When a message indicating so appear on the instrument cluster, clean the sensor surface. FCW is disabled while the sensor is dirty or covered and will resume after clearing.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)*

- The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists ahead. The system is triggered to help avoid collision or reduce the impact if possible serious collisions are detected.
- At about 4-150 km/h, the AEB system monitors the road ahead in real time and automatically applies braking if a

collision risk with a vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclists is detected.

- During emergency braking, the hazard warning lights may be activated to illuminate, alerting following vehicles to the risk of collision. If the hazard warning lights do not automatically turn off after emergency braking ends, the driver needs to manually turn them off.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. AEB can not replace your judgment and operation.
- During emergency braking, the hazard lights may be activated to illuminate and alert following vehicles of the rear-end collision risk. If the hazard lights do not automatically turn off after emergency braking, the driver need to manually deactivate them.

Function Settings

- Enable or disable AEB in the infotainment touchscreen →**settings** →**ADAS** →**Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- Drivers are advised not to disable the AEB (Automatic Emergency Braking) system. because this would prevent system assistance in reducing vehicle speed and avoiding/mitigating collisions.

System Limitations

- AEB is only activated when the speed exceeds 8 km/h. This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance under all circumstances. Always drive with caution.
- Targets that may not be responded to include, but are not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or riders
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - The road conditions are poor due to pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.

- The hood or trunk is not closed properly or opened during driving.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- For seats where the Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) function is linked to the seat belt, the passenger is not fastened or has unfastened the seat belt.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
- The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
- ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
- Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
- The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- System malfunction or system in need of servicing

- AEB may be unable to properly respond to complex traffic, including but not limited to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- Causes that may hinder optimal system performance include but are not limited to:
  - Strong front bumper impact from an accident or other causes
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or braking system malfunction
  - Worn or improperly inflated tires
  - Unqualified tires installed
  - Snow chains installed
  - Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit
  - Heavy loads
  - Break-in period
- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.

- AEB cannot be activated when the vehicle is towing a trailer or operating in special driving modes such as snow, mud, sand, or mount mode.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. AEB is not a replacement for your judgment and vehicle control under any circumstances.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. AEB may not brake due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary braking in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger unnecessary braking.
- Do not attempt to test AEB with cartons, metal plates, dummies, or other objects, as the system may not function properly and thus causing accidents.
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in any of the following situations:

WARNING

- The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
- Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
- The vehicle has experienced a collision.
- ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- The system will not trigger AEB when you are aware of an emergency warning but turn the steering wheel, accelerate, or brake.
- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- Contamination or obstruction may cause radar and front camera sensor blindness. When a message indicating so appear on the instrument cluster, clean the sensor surface. When the sensor is dirty or covered, AEB is disabled. After clearing, it resumes normal operation.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)*

- At around 10–20 km/h, the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or

cyclist is detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.

- This warning is provided through a beep from the buzzer and an animation of radar waves and target highlights on the instrument cluster, indicating the side where a potential collision may occur.

Function Settings

- Enable or disable AEB in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- FCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - Function disabled
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The hood or trunk is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The steering wheel is turned sharply or rapidly.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The driver press and release the brake pedal.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning, a false warning, or a delayed warning.
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may issue warnings as appropriate.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle operations in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.

- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTA warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

- When the vehicle is traveling at 4–20 km/h, the front cross traffic braking (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- You will be informed of the braking through a message and an animation of radar waves on the instrument cluster, indicating the side where a potential collision may occur and the target.

WARNING

- FCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification.
- Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable RCTB on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- FCTB is active only when both reminder and braking are enabled.

System Limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.

- FCTB may not operate or disengage during a braking in certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The front hood or trunk is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The steering wheel is turned sharply or rapidly.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The driver press and release the brake pedal.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no braking, a false braking, or a delayed braking.
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not brake as appropriate.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle operations in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- FCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB operations may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*

- Traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects speed limit information using cameras or map data and illuminates the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster to maintain an appropriate speed.
- TSR contains two sub-functions: speed limit information function (SLIF) and intelligent speed limit warning (ISLW).
  - Speed limit information function (SLIF): detects speed limit information by using cameras or maps and lights up the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster.
  - Intelligent speed limit warning (ISLW): When the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit, the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster flashes to remind the driver to stay within the speed limit.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- When TSR is off, TSR and all subfunctions are disabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and ISLW can be switched on or off according to needs.
- Audible alert for speed limit change: enables/disables audible alerts when the speed limit changes are detected.
- When the system identifies a speed limit sign, the corresponding indicator is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- When the instrument cluster shows the speed is above the identified speed limit, a warning icon will be shown on the instrument cluster to alert the driver.
- Intelligent speed limit warning (ISLW): enables/disables visual and/or audible alerts when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.
- Speed limit warning (SLW): In the home screen status or pull-down interface of the central control screen, you can quickly enable/disable the audio alert when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign value.

REMINDER

- The TSR system identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not involves in the active control of the vehicle. Please drive responsibly.
- Map data is updated regularly to ensure system performance.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If

REMINDER

not, have the system repaired in a timely manner.

- If TSR malfunctions and becomes unavailable, have the system repaired immediately.

System Limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- The detection of speed limit signs is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged windshield, or blocked multi-purpose camera
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - The speed limit signs are unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Weight or width limit signs are not in standard size as per local regulations.
  - The system may obtain incorrect speed limit information due to time limitations of map-based data. This may occur, for example, during road construction, when the posted speed limit has changed, or when speed limit signs are newly added or removed.
  - Vehicle positioning may be inaccurate in complex road environments, such as multi-level elevated roads or parallel main and auxiliary roads.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR only serves to alert for speeding and cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and respond in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear speed limit signs
  - Incomplete speed limit signs
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front camera or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Front camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked
  - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:

CAUTION

- System start up during vehicle power-on or reboot
- Situations mentioned in System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Curve Speed Warning (CSW)

- The curve speed warning (CSW) function uses a camera to detect the curvature of the road ahead and evaluates the vehicle speed to determine whether the vehicle is traveling too fast for an upcoming or current curve. It is designed to help improve driving safety when negotiating curves.
- When the vehicle entering or driving through a curve, if the vehicle speed exceeds the safe cornering speed and other activation conditions are met, the system will issue an overspeed warning. In potentially dangerous situations, the system provides visual and audible alerts to warn the driver, thereby reducing the risk of accidents.

Function Settings

- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to the setting used before the last power-off.
- CSW is only active during manual driving.

System Limitations

- CSW can only be activated when the vehicle speed is between 30–150 km/h.
- CSW can only be activated when the curve radius is between 50–1000 m.
- CSW cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing/ snow/mud/sand/mountain mode.
- CSW cannot be activated when the traction control system (TCS) or the vehicle dynamic control (VDC) system is active.

WARNING

- CSW is a driver assistance warning function only and cannot reduce vehicle speed. The driver must actively control the vehicle speed when a warning is issued.
- The system performance may be affected by environmental conditions such as night driving, backlighting, sunset, rain, fog, haze, snow or ice coverage, sand/dust, or sudden changes in brightness. These conditions may reduce detection capability or delay warnings. The driver must comply with traffic laws and is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Road conditions may also affect system performance. In complex scenarios such as intersections with complicated lane markings, unclear or overlapping lane lines, or absence of lane markings, the system may not function properly or may generate false warnings. The driver must comply with traffic laws and is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use CSW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Side Safety Assist

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)*

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its lane, LDA issues an

alert or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.

- Lane Departure Assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP). The system's operating speed range is 65–150 km/h.
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)： The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.
- Lane Departure Prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function Settings

- Enable or disable AEB in the infotainment touchscreen →**settings** → ⚙ →**ADAS**→ **Safety Assist**.
  - OFF: deactivates all LDA functions.
  - Reminder: turns on LDW only, which does not implement steering intervention.
  - Correction: turns on LDP to offer corrective steering inputs.
  - All activated: Activating both the lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP) at the same time.
- The feature is enabled by factory default. The system always defaults to this state when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning mode is Vibration by factory default and can be changed to Voice or Voice+Vibration. every time the vehicle is just started, the last mode setting is maintained.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated.
- LDA is suppressed in the event of continued lane straddling.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the hood, or the trunk is open or faulty.
- The camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- The driver must keep hands on the steering wheel during LDP activation, or the instrument cluster will prompt a hands-off alarm. The hands-off alarm varies depending on the frequency of hands-off events within a short period. The message "Please turn the steering wheel gently" displays on the instrument cluster

REMINDER

for the first hands-off; "Please turn the steering wheel gently" for the second; "Please take over immediately" for the third occurrences.

- When LDA fails, and a prompt message are displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Lane line detection is sensitive to the environment. The system may not work or its performance may be significantly degraded in cases including but not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged windshield, or blocked multi-purpose camera
  - There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane markings obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight on sunny days
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).
  - Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
  - Lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt/snow.
  - Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.
  - The vehicle is operating on slopes or winding roads where it travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures the lane markings.
- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions

CAUTION

- On uneven roads

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the cameras or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Cameras coming off, loosely installed, or blocked
  - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- LDA may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - System start up during vehicle power-on or reboot
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not intentionally test LDA function.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control. LDP only applies corrective steering to guide the vehicle back into its lane, instead of keeping it centered. Do not rely on LDP to avoid side collisions.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle if the function is suppressed or deactivated. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.
- Emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detects vehicles in adjacent lanes with corner mmWave radars. If the vehicle is detected to unintentionally drift out of its lane, or be at risk of doing so, and is likely to collide with a detected target, corrective steering input of ELKA keeps the vehicle in its lane. This helps prevent unintentional lane departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming traffics or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.
- Operating speed range: 50–150 km/h.

- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory. ELKA is turned on by default when the vehicle restarts.

Function Settings

Enable or disable the ELKA in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. The system is off by default.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation from the road or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- ELKA is unavailable in the event of malfunctions, which is indicated by solid on the instrument cluster. In this case, contact

REMINDER

a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles may be impaired under certain conditions, resulting in no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or degraded performance. Situations include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane markings are obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight.
  - Road boundaries are unidentifiable due to grass, soil, curbs and so on.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).
  - Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
  - Lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt/snow.
  - Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.

- The vehicle is operating on slopes or winding roads where it travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures the lane markings.

- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in a delayed action. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the radar or camera detection area.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area in front of or beside the vehicle at close range.
  - Fences, traffic barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles are present in the front-side or rear-side of the vehicle that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front-side or rear-side areas.
  - Obstacles in the front-side or rear-side areas have low contrast against the surrounding environment.
  - Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas are located on a curve.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
  - The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

CAUTION

- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late warnings include, but are not limited to:
  - Cameras are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
  - Camera lens are partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes*.

CAUTION

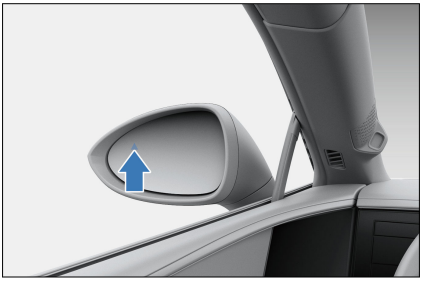
- ELKA may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.
  - System start up during vehicle power-on or reboot
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not intentionally test ELKA function.
- ELKA only applies corrective steering to guide the vehicle back into its lane in case of lane departure or when there is a risk of collision, instead of keeping it centered. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system issues a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.
- The blind spot detection (BSD) system uses sensors such as radars to detect targets such as vehicles or cyclists in the driver's blind spot.



- When the vehicle is traveling at about 15–150 km/h, the side mirror indicator flashes if BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turn signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator on the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an audible alarm given (optional) to warn the driver of a possible collision.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects onto the side mirror glass. Doing so may affect BSD functionality.
- Ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact

REMINDER

a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Function Settings

- Enable or disable BSD on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  - OFF: Disables BSD.
  - Visual: Enables BSD with visual warning via indicator lights.
  - Visual + Audible: Enables BSD with both visual warning and audible alerts when the turn signal is activated under blind spot risk conditions.
  - The default setting is Visual.

System Limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- BSD and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, and heavy smoke
  - On sharp curves
  - At below 15 km/h
  - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle
- The system is starting up during vehicle power-on or reboot.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- Glare, reflections, and other poor lighting settings where misidentification is possible (For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.)

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. Always change lanes in a safe manner.
- BSD is not a replacement for the rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident involving injuries and property damage.

Door Open Warning (DOW)

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety.
- Door Open Warning (DOW) detects targets (vehicles, cyclists) on both sides of the vehicle through sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power on or moving slowly at a speed below 2 km/h, the alarm indicator on the side mirror illuminates when DOW detects a collision risk during door opening.

The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated. If an occupant opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes and an audio alert sounds, reminding the occupant of the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects onto the side mirror glass. Doing so may affect DOW functionality.
- Ensure the normal operation of the DOW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode, DOW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side mmWave radars can degrade DOW performance. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Operating the System

- To enable or disable the DOW on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled by default.

System Limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- DOW and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, and heavy smoke
  - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
  - A large vehicle behind blocks the radar detection area.
  - There are small targets or slow-moving targets.
  - The target is moving fast or turning, such as changing lanes to the rear of your vehicle, or suddenly entering the detection area behind your vehicle.
- The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations listed under general system limitations
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to misdetect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual checks. Visually checking the surroundings before opening a door is the most effective safety measure and the responsibility of all occupants.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay

WARNING

alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.

- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident involving injuries and property damage.

Rear Safety Assist*

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward. The function is enabled by default.
- When the vehicle is traveling below 150 km/h, the rear collision warning (RCW) system monitors the rear driving environment in real time using sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when a rear-end collision risk is detected.
- For purpose of the warning, the interior ambient lights and the front ambient light on the corresponding side are steady on, and the rear of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted in red. The hazard warning lights are also activated to alert following drivers.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. RCW cannot replace your judgment and operation.
- Ensure the normal operation of the RCW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode, RCW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the rear mmWave radars can degrade RCW performance. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable RCW on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

System Limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- RCW only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. RCW does not operate while the vehicle is reversing.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):

- Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, and heavy smoke
- Any door, the hood, or the trunk is open or faulty.
- The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
- The driver brakes hard.
- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations listed under general system limitations
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog
  - Large vehicles behind block the radar or camera detection area
  - Unclear, inaccurate, or incomplete obstacle detection cause by, for example, obstruction at the vehicle's rear or low lighting contrast with the front environment
  - On a curve or rear targets on a curve
  - Targets behind detectable only after your lane change
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area behind the vehicle at close range
  - While reversing
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace your judgment and operation. Do not be over-reliant on the RCW system. RCW cannot replace your judgment and operation.
- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, you should take immediate measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident involving injuries and property damage.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) system detects moving vehicles in the rear blind spot and issues a warning when it detects a potential collision risk

with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. The RCTA operating speed range is 0–15 km/h.

- This warning is provided through an audible alert, voice notifications, an animation of radar waves indicating the side of possible collision, target rendering on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function Settings

- Enable or disable the FCW in the infotainment touchscreen →**settings**→ →**ADAS**→**Safety Assist**.

System Limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane at the last minute.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to

interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode, RCTA does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB)

- The Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) system warns the driver and assists with braking when the vehicle is reversing out of a vertical or angled parking space and there is a collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. This helps avoid collisions with traffic crossing behind the vehicle, particularly when the driver's view is blocked by neighboring parked vehicles. The RCTB operating speed range is 0-10 km/h.
- You will be informed of the braking through a message and an animation of radar waves on the instrument cluster, indicating the side where a potential collision may occur.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable RCTB on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

System Limitations

- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or timing, which may result in no braking or a delayed braking. Situations include but are not limited to the following:

- The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane at the last minute.
- The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
- The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
- The target is obscured.
- The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode, RCTB does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Light Switches

Light System

- Adaptive front light (AFL) is a driver assistance feature that helps the driver use the high beam appropriately in dark environments. The system automatically switches from low beam to high beam to maximize visibility in low-light conditions. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Operating the System

- Enable or disable AFL in infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** →**Exterior Light**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- AFL indicators:

Standby	Activated	Fault
		

High beam on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in the AUTO position.
  - The vehicle speed is between 35 km/h and 140km/h.
  - The area ahead is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime conditions, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when sufficient ambient lighting is detected on the road.
  - At night, the system suppresses the high beam when other road users are detected within a certain range ahead.

WARNING

- AFL may be falsely triggered or fail to operate due to various environmental factors and conditions. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:
  - The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
  - There are road users with low visibility (such as pedestrians or cyclists), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.

WARNING

- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
- The front windshield that is fogged, dirty, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- AFL serves as an auxiliary light control and cannot replace the driver's judgment. You must observe road regulations and switch between high and low beams based on changing road conditions.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

REMINDER

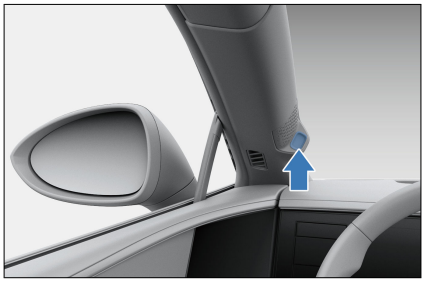
- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect AFL functionality.
- Activating the high beam manually suppresses the AFL feature.

Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS), including fatigue and distraction warning, provides different alerts based on driver monitoring results.

How to Use

- The camera for DMS is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver side. Before using the system, ensure that the in-cabin camera permission is enabled in privacy settings, DMS is enabled, and the camera cover is open and unobstructed. If the camera cover is closed or blocked, DMS will not operate properly.



- When the ignition switched on, you can set DMS on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping →**Drive**→**Driving Perception**.

Functions

Fatigue driving warning

- When the vehicle speed meets the activation conditions, the fatigue driving warning is enabled, and the camera is unobstructed, the system monitors the driver's state. If signs of fatigue are detected, such as eye closure, yawning, or prolonged driving, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, the voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

Distraction driving warning

- When the vehicle speed meets the activation conditions, the distraction driving warning is enabled, and the camera is unobstructed, the system monitors the driver's state. If signs of distraction are detected, such as failing to look ahead for a period of time without steering or turn signal operation, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, the voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

REMINDER

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.
- Activation conditions:
  - The in-vehicle camera permission is not disabled in privacy settings.
  - DMS is enabled.
  - Vehicle speed is not greater than 60 km/h.
  - Camera is unobstructed and functioning normally.

Precautions

- As an assistance system, DMS is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations and cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgment. You must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, complying with all road laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.

- The proper functioning and accuracy of DMS can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - The in-vehicle camera permission is not enabled.
  - Driver monitoring assistance is disabled.
  - The camera is obstructed or the slide cover is not fully open.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognize.
  - The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
  - The driver wears a mask or something that covers the face.
  - The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

- Pull over and take a rest as soon as possible when you feel tired.

Child Presence Detection (CPD)*

After the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed or locked, child presence detection (CDP), as an auxiliary reminder function, is performed to detects life presence inside the vehicle. If life presence is detected, a reminder is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. Open any door to cancel the reminder.

How to Use

To access the CPD setting interface, go to → **Drive** → **Driving Perception** → **Child Presence Detection**.

Function Switches Settings* Off, Standard, and Delayed

- The CPD system retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.
- OFF: CPD function is disabled.
- Delay: the alarm starts in about 5 minutes.

Precautions

- When CPD is enabled with Standard mode:
  - If the system first detects life presence in front or second-row seats after the vehicle is powered off and locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 10 seconds and will last for about 3 seconds.
  - If the system first detects life presence in front or second-row seats while the vehicle is powered off and unlocked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 3 seconds.
- When CPD is enabled with Delay mode:
  - If the system first detects life presence in rear seats while the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 3 seconds.
- If the initial alarm is not canceled,
  - The alarm will be upgraded in 80 seconds (light flashing and honking) and will last for 25 minutes.
  - The A/C will be switched on three minutes after reminder escalation,

and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

- Canceling the alarm
  - When alarm is triggered, tap the button on the infotainment touchscreen to cancel the alarm. The setting will remain effective during the current power-off cycle (i.e., from the current power-off to the next power-on).
  - When alarm is triggered, open any door to cancel the alarm. Unlocking the vehicle temporarily cancels the current alarm; if the user does not open any door promptly, the alarm will be retriggered.
- You will receive notifications in the BYD app and SMS of reminder escalation and other system responses.

WARNING

- The system notifies users with light flashing, honking, app message prompts, SMS, and A/C operation to reduce the harm to the presence in the vehicle. However, CPD is only an auxiliary system and may not reliably detect or issue reminders in all circumstances. The user must remain alarm at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- When a reminder is provided, check whether any life presence has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further safety incident.

CAUTION

- CPD is only an auxiliary reminder system, and cannot ensure every alarm-raising when life presence is left in the vehicle. The user must remain alarm (especially for child) at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- The alarm may be given for adults, pets, or other lives detected.
- The alarm cannot be canceled by unlocking the vehicle remotely from the app.
- The system may not be able to issue a reminder or turn on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at a high SOC is recommended.

Head-up Display (HUD)

The head-up display (HUD) function projects important information, including vehicle speed, navigation, speed limit, ACC, lane departure, and BSD into the driver's field of view on the front windshield. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of their eyes.

Operating the System

- To enable or disable HUD, go to the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Display** → **HUD**.
- By factory default, HUD is on and the image is displayed. When it is disabled, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
  - Height adjusting: adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
  - Brightness adjusting: adjust the brightness of HUD virtual image in

between 0 and 10. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 5.

- Whirling adjusting: adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.
- Mode setting: select Classic (default setting) or Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle.
- Snow mode: select Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle. The system defaults to close.
- Mode switching: Select standard or concise based on user preference. The system defaults to concise.
- Settings optional for display: Safe driving assistance and navigation can be selected and are enabled by default. Tap the button to select the setting for HUD display. Tap the button again to deselect and close the item.

CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

Tire Pressure Monitoring

- The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) help monitor tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- You can access the instrument cluster menu by pressing the button on the steering wheel, navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the ◁ and ▷ buttons, and then select the tire pressure display screen using the scroll button.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 75% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow. It is recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "Abnormal signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tire pressure conforms to

WARNING

the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injuries can occur.

- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that the installation and replacement

CAUTION

of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.

- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-DENZA approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tires* or tire rotations. Go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

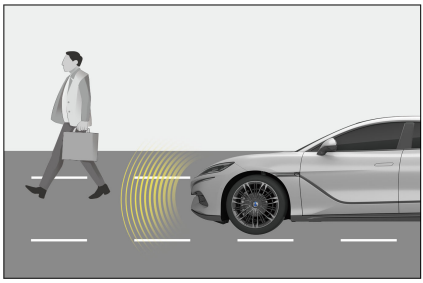
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

Function overview

The Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is traveling at low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The sound volume varies proportionally to speed up to 20 km/h.
  - The sound volume varies inversely with speed between 20 km/h and 30 km/h.

- At speeds above 30 km/h, the sound stops.



- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced sound when reversing.

Disabling/Enabling the System

To turn on or off the engine sound simulator, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to display the shortcut screen. The system is enabled by factory default.

WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the vehicle approaching, decreasing vehicle safety.
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h in Drive and check whether an audio prompt can be heard from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

WARNING

Driving Safety Systems

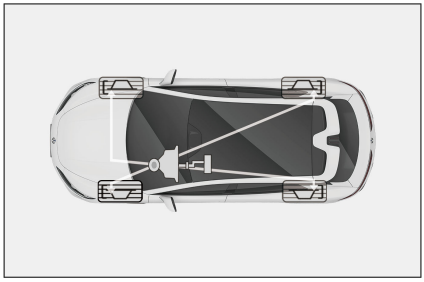
For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and over-reliance on them is risky.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS), ESC and other features. The system assists in vehicle braking according to the driver's braking request. It also improves vehicle stability and increases driving comfort by combining a range of advanced control functions such as ABS, electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), hill-start hold control (HHC), hydraulic brake assist (HBA), and controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP), comfort stop (CST), Hazard Warning Signal (HAZ) , and hill descent control (HDC).

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.



- During hard braking, ABS monitors the speeds of all wheels and adjusts braking forces on the wheels according to wheel lock-up status.
- ABS prevents the wheels from locking up while you are applying the maximum braking force and, in most cases, improves steering control during sudden braking.
- The ESC warning light flashes while ABS is working. Maintain firm and continuous on the brake pedal at this time for ABS to work. A noise may normally be heard because ABS is pulsating the brake quickly. In this situation, you should press and hold the brake pedal instead of pumping the brakes. This allows ABS to function as designed.

WARNING

- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always drive carefully, keeping a safe distance from other vehicles, regardless of road and weather conditions. Take extra caution to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead:
  - on slippery, muddy, sandy, or snowy roads or at high speeds
  - on potholed roads or uneven roads
  - on bumpy roads

WARNING

- If the ABS warning light turns on, stop at a safe place immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- As a braking feature, ABS cannot surpass limits of physical laws. ABS will not reduce the time and distance required to bring the vehicle to a full stop, nor can it rule out danger from wheel skidding. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate.
- When running on wet, soft, or uneven surfaces (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), a vehicle with ABS may require a longer braking distance than a vehicle without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD)

- An auxiliary feature of ABS, EBD When the vehicle brakes, EBD automatically adjusts the braking force distribution ratio between the front and rear axles to enhance braking efficiency. It also works in conjunction with ABS to further improve braking stability, making the vehicle steady during the braking process.

Traction Control System(TCS)

- TCS reduces powertrain power to prevent the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration and applies braking forces when necessary to prevent drive wheels from spinning. This makes it easier for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and go up slopes.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Vehicle Dynamics Control(VDC)

- When the vehicle is running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and yaw angle, and continuously compares with the actual vehicle condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes or reducing power output to the corresponding wheels to maintain vehicle stability.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

- While you are shifting your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal on a slope, HHC maintains the brake pressure you imposed for about two seconds to prevent the vehicle from rolling back.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

- When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)

- in an emergency, press and hold the Park button to activate CDP. The vehicle then brakes at a constant deceleration (on highly adhesive surfaces: 0.4 g if the Park button is pressed but the brake pedal is not, and 0.8 g if both the "P" button and the brake pedal are pressed) until the vehicle stops. Releasing the "P" button stops CDP.

Comfort Parking (CST)

- With CST active, the intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the brakes, to provide a smoother feel as you decelerate for a non-emergency stop.
- Enable or disable this feature in the infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive** → **Driving Settings**.
- This feature may increase the braking distance. Aim a longer distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.

Brake disc wiping

- Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
- As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

Hazard Warning Signal (HAZ)

- HAZ（Hazard Warning Signal）monitors the obvious deceleration of the vehicle and sends network signals to the body control module to flash the brake lights to alert drivers in the rear. This gives time for the drivers in the

rear to decelerate or avoid, reducing the risks of accidents.

Electronic Stability Controller (ESC)

- ESC working
  - When ESC is working, the ESC indicator flashes.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce the power output from the powertrain. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - ESC is on by default. To turn it off, press the ESC OFF button* or go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **DiSus**.
  - Some of the ESC functions resume when the ESC OFF button is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h.
- ESC switch mis-operation
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC switch is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC
  - If the ESC system is off before the vehicle is shut down, it will automatically be restarted the next time the vehicle is powered back on.

WARNING

- Press ESC OFF switch to turn off ESC. Drive carefully and avoid violent driving to prevent hardware failure. To ensure the driving stability of the vehicle, do not turn off the ESC function unless necessary.

- When ESC system is activated
  - If the ESC indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- When ESC system is disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires or if the suspension or the braking system has been altered. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System.....212
A/C System.....223
BYD App.....227
Storage.....228
Other Devices.....230
Refrigerator.....234

Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.



WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.
- Do not place any magnetic objects close to the camera while it is in use or the camera will descent and may not work properly.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - Touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.

Reset to factory settings

- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes.

Infotainment System Home Screen

- When the infotainment system is started for the first time, a warning message will appear. Tap **Agree** to enter the system.
- When the infotainment system is started, the screen is automatically displayed, containing status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.
- The top status bar displays various status icons.

These icons fall into two categories: operable* and display only.

- Shortcut menu

  Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen opens the shortcut menu.

- Navigation Bar

  - : returns to the homepage.

    Touch and hold this button to switch between wallpaper and map desktops base on preferences.

  - : goes to the vehicle settings screen.

  - : goes to the app list screen.

  - : enables screen saver.

- Task management center

  Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management center.

- Desktop widget: The components on the desktop are customized by factory default, and users can add, delete or change the location of widgets according to their preferences.

CAUTION

- When the infotainment system malfunctions, upload the fault information in "Practical Tools".

Gestures and Responses

Gestures to interact with the system include:

- Tapping: opens an application, selects a function, clicks an icon on the touchscreen, or types with the onscreen keyboard.
- Dragging: re-positions an icon, thumbnail, or preview. Drop when you reach the intended position.
- Swiping: is operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in an image. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/Pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.

Vehicle Settings on the infotainment touchscreen

Vehicle setting of the infotainment system includes: Search, DENZA LinK, DENZA Pilot, Energy,Vehicle Settings, Service.

Reset to factory settings

- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any button of the infotainment system or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes.

Bluetooth Call

Setting up the connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Connect**.

2. Tap **Available devices** to search.
3. Pair an available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Making a Bluetooth call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, or **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimize the dialing screen.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

OTA Update

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update your software to the latest immediately or schedule an update through infotainment touchscreen or BYD App based on your vehicle usage.
  - To update through infotainment touchscreen, To access the version updating, tap the infotainment touchscreen → → **System** → **About**.
  - BYD App operation: To access the Phone software updating, tap the **BYD App** → **More functions** → **System upgrade**.

CAUTION

- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear with a stable network connection.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the on-board diagnostics port before or during the update.
- During the OTA upgrade, all functions are not available except the unlocking/locking, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, try it again. If it continues to fails, contact the official customer service or a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, and the fault warning lights such as the parking system fault warning light, ABS fault warning light and ESC fault warning light are on at the same time, Do not drive the vehicle and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to check the vehicle status.

REMINDER

- Upgrade paths may vary from the actual ones on the infotainment touchscreen and App. The actual paths shall prevail.
- Some functions may change after OTA update. Check the

REMINDER

latest version number for update descriptions.

Calling DENZA Assistant

BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.

- Waking up BYD Assistant:
  - On the steering wheel, press the button.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the BYD Assistant icon.
  - Say the wake-up word: "Hi, BYD" or "Hi, DENZA".
- Your voice commands can be recognized after system wake-up.
- Give any instructions.
  - This may be "Go home" (shortcut locations set), "Play music", "Make a call" (contacts data and Bluetooth connection required), "Set the temperature to 23 degree", or "Turn on the seat ventilation for the driver". BYD Assistant then performs the recognized instruction.

Other apps:

Customization app—map

- Customized map: supports location, search, route planning, navigation, and other functions.
- Most interactive controls are on the left side of the map to adapt to real driving.

External Applications

This infotainment system is an Android-based system and supports the installation of external apps.

- Installing external apps:
  1. Download the desired app.
  2. Tap the app file, select Allow app installation from external sources to proceed with the installation.
  3. After installation, the app appear in the app list. Tap to use it.

CAUTION

- Applications that are not officially certified may not work properly.
- Installing a lot of unnecessary software may make the system unusable. Use it with caution.

- Uninstalling external apps:
  1. Select the app to uninstall in System → Apps → Apps.
  2. Tap **Uninstall** and confirm.

CAUTION

- Default apps preinstalled on this infotainment system cannot be uninstalled.

My Car

My Car consists of vehicle control, driving behavior, and vehicle health.

- Vehicle control consists of shortcut control and 3D vehicle model control*.
  - Shortcut control: Operate vehicle functions via the left-side shortcut bar or the bottom card shortcut, enabling one-tap control.

- 3D vehicle model control: Tap hotspot areas on the vehicle model to control
- Vehicle control customization: Users can click more to view all shortcut functions, and long press the shortcut function to drag the position.

REMINDER

- The availability of applications depends on the vehicle's actual configuration.

Passenger Seat

The front passenger seat display is located in front of the front passenger seat.

When the ignition is on, the system starts to work.



- The desktop provides multiple convenient app shortcut cards. Users can add additional cards after the last one or long-press to delete cards.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen to open shortcut menu
- The front passenger seat display supports connectivity for Bluetooth headphones and gaming controllers.

Scenario Mode

- Users can enable or disable the scenario mode via the pull-down quick access bar or the smart voice assistant.

REMINDER

- The availability of applications depends on the vehicle's actual configuration.

Vehicle Settings

- You can access display settings via the front passenger display → **Display** to adjust functions such as brightness, screen saver, and screen animation.
- You can access sound settings via the front passenger display → **Sound** to adjust functions such as volume. When a Bluetooth headset is connected to the front passenger display, you can select the audio output source (vehicle speakers or Bluetooth headset).

REMINDER

- The rear display connects to a wireless network provided by the front center infotainment touchscreen and cannot actively search for or connect to nearby hotspots.
- Available applications may vary depending on the actual vehicle configuration.

Mobile Phone Screen Projection

Video projection:

1. Pull down the shortcut center, tap "Mobile phone screen projection", and connect the mobile phone to the vehicle's local area network according to the prompts.

2. Open a video app on the phone, select a video, and tap the "TV" button on the page to project the screen.

Mirror projection:

1. Pull down the shortcut center, tap "Mobile phone screen projection", and connect the mobile phone to the vehicle's local area network according to the prompts.
2. Enable the "Mirror" function on your phone to start mirroring.

Multi-screen casting

Multi-screen casting is an entertainment sharing feature that enables synchronized content playback across multiple in-vehicle cabin displays. It is primarily used for scenarios such as video playback and karaoke. In the above scenarios, users can synchronize the live screen feed to devices such as the central control screen and front passenger screen, enabling multi-screen video synchronization, multi-device synchronized karaoke, and other interactive entertainment features within the cabin.

How to Use

1. Users can click on the Application Center → Multi-Screen Broadcast.
2. On the multi-cast page, select the video or karaoke app to be shared.
3. To initiate a multi-screen broadcast, select “Share to All” or drag the image to another screen.

Using method two

- To initiate multi-cast, click the floating multi-cast button within the app that supports multi-cast functionality.

Passenger Seat Greeting

- Select a preset animation template in the infotainment → → Passenger Seat Greeting and customize the content to showcase when the front passenger get on the vehicle.

Phone Projection

Phone projection* allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process is to be completed on the phone or the infotainment touchscreen: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- Wired connections require a connection between a certified USB cable to the USB data transfer port on the vehicle.
- When connecting wirelessly, pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. It is better to keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on in this process.

REMINDER

- For the connection to be stable, it is better to change the vehicle hotspot name to avoid name-related issues.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected. The phone projected is shown on the device list.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the iPhone USB cable to stop Apple CarPlay. If you have chosen to enable wireless CarPlay, the phone and the vehicle pair automatically to allow for future wireless connections.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.
  1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Apple CarPlay app , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.
- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Connect the Bluetooth of the current device.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this CarPlay device.
  - Turn off your phone Wi-Fi.

REMINDER

- Note that stopping the current connection will not have other CarPlay devices connected automatically.

Reconnecting

- Disconnected wired Apple CarPlay will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Apple CarPlay and built-in infotainment system

- To exit the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the DENZA icon on Apple CarPlay's home screen.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Apple CarPlay history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection.

- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Apple CarPlay icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- Access the connected device list by tapping the connected device icon on the shortcut menu or by going to → **System** → **Connect** → **Connected Devices**.
- The connected device list supports switching to wireless devices only. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- If the phone is in wireless screen-mirroring mode, connecting its USB port only supports charging and will not trigger the switching prompt. but connecting that of another phone will.

Q&A

- **How do I know if my phone works with Android Auto?**
  - Use a phone that is in proper conditions. Apple CarPlay may often freeze on older iPhone models or earlier iOS versions.
  - A smooth cellular network is necessary. Sluggish network connections could cause apps to lag.
  - Apple CarPlay may disconnect by signal interference in a complex network environment.
- **How can I check the connection between my phone and the vehicle**
  - For wired connections, be sure to use the data transfer port, and preferably a MFi-certified or genuine iPhone cable.
  - For wireless connections, verify your phone settings:
    - Bluetooth has been turned on.
    - Wi-Fi has been turned on and Auto-Join of the vehicle hotspot toggled on.
    - Wireless Carplay has been selected at the very first Apple CarPlay connection. In case you do not know, navigate on your iPhone to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. Delete your iPhone from the device list on the vehicle. Then reset Apple CarPlay.
  - In the event of MFi authentication chip issue or reading error, delete histories and reconnect. If the issue persist, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
  - The name of the vehicle's Bluetooth or hotspot must be unique.
    - Search on your phone for nearby Bluetooth and hotspots. Make sure that no other devices have the same name as the vehicle to prevent interference.
    - You can change the vehicle Bluetooth or personal hotspot name in the infotainment touchscreen → → **System** → **Connect**.
  - Make sure Siri is on.
  - Make sure Apple CarPlay is not restricted.

    If your iPhone is not detected by Apple CarPlay, navigate on the phone to **Settings** → **Screen Time** → **Content & Privacy Restrictions**. If **Content & Privacy Restrictions** is on, tap **Allowed Apps & Features**

to make sure that Apple CarPlay is enabled.

- If Apple CarPlay is disconnected by turning the vehicle hotspot off, wireless reconnection cannot be performed within 10 minutes. Try after that.
- You can restart by forgetting history settings:

  On your iPhone, navigate to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. In the meantime, delete this phone from the vehicle's device list.
- If the wireless connection fails after a wired connection is ended by unplugging the USB cable, clear CarPlay device information on your iPhone or restart the phone.

- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an Android Auto-compatible phone to one of the vehicle's USB data transfer ports with a certified USB cable and set up as prompted.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the USB cable or. Alternatively, you can end the connection or delete the projected phone in **Connected Devices**.

  1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
  2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.
- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Turning Bluetooth on the vehicle or Wi-Fi on the phone off may stop projection.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this Android Auto device.

Reconnecting Android Auto

- Disconnected wired Android Auto will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Android Auto, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system

- To exit Android Auto user interface, tap on Android Auto interface.

- To access Android Auto user interface, tap the Android Auto icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Android Auto history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection. Connection prompts will be given if projection conditions are not met.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Android Auto icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- You can switch between wireless Android Auto devices in the connected device list and get a switching prompt after selecting another device.
- However, this step does not work for switching to a wired device, which requires unplugging and replugging the USB cable.
- If the phone is in wireless screen-mirroring mode, connecting its USB port only supports charging and will not trigger the switching prompt. but connecting that of another phone will.

Q&A

- **Android Auto not working**
  - Make sure your phone supports Google service.
  - Check if the phone operation system supports Android Auto.
    - Common Android Auto compatible devices are Android phones running Android 11.0 or later versions. Consult your phone maker for compatibility.
    - Android Auto is not supported on phones running Android (Go edition).
  - Verify that your phones has the latest version of Android Auto app.
    - Search for Android Auto in phone Settings, then go to the Android Auto screen to view the version.
    - If Android Auto cannot be found, search for it in Google Play to download or update.
  - Check if the connection between your phone and the vehicle is working normally.
    - For wired connections, use a good USB cable to connect the phone and the data transfer port.
    - For wireless connections, make sure Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are enabled on your phone and so do the vehicle Bluetooth and hotspot.
- **What should I do if Android Auto cannot be reconnected?**

  Try the following steps:
  - If you are using a wired connection, change to a genuine USB cable of the phone.
  - For a wireless connection, change the vehicle hotspot name (→ **System** → **Connect**) or turn off the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on the phone and the vehicle, then turn them back on.
  - Restart your phone and the vehicle infotainment system.
  - Delete and reconnect your phone as follows:

    1. Forget previously connected devices on the phone: Go to your Android phone's settings, then navigate to or search for

Android Auto settings (on Google phones for example, **Settings** → **Connected devices** → **Connection preferences** → **Android Auto**).

2. Tap **Previously connected cars**, then the three-dot menu button, and select **Forget all cars**.
3. On the vehicle infotainment touchscreen, go to → **System** → **Connect** → **Connected Devices**, then delete the device you want.
4. Delete your phone from **Bluetooth Settings**.
5. Reactivate the connection between the phone and the vehicle.

- **Causes to unstable Android Auto connections**
  - For wired Android Auto, typical causes are:
    - Unstable data transmission due to low-quality USB cable
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the vehicle
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the phone
    - Unstable connections due to BC1.2 incompatibility of the vehicle USB port
    - Unstable connections due to an old version of Android Auto on the phone
    - Strong vehicle vibration on rugged roads
  - For wireless Android Auto, they include:
    - Hotspot turned off on the vehicle or Wi-Fi off on the phone
    - complex network environments or weak signals (for example, vehicle hotspot having to compete for frequency resources if various Wi-Fi creators are working concurrently)
    - Bad cellular reception (in a basement or forest, for example)
    - Too old version of Android Auto on the phone (the latest version recommend)
    - Multiple BYD vehicles nearby with identical hotspot names
    - Faulty or malfunctioning Bluetooth or Wi-Fi module on the phone or the vehicle
- **Apps not available on Android Auto**
  - Not all apps on your phone are compatible with Android Auto, so some of them may not be displayed on the user interface.
  - Mobile network influences app presence or usage on Android Auto. Some apps cannot be opened without mobile network connections.
  - Given the feature or permission differences of apps between Android Auto and the phone, please consult the app providers if you have questions on app usage.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.
- Android Auto connections require the use of Bluetooth on both your phone and the vehicle, which could disconnect other already connected Bluetooth devices.

REMINDER

- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of Wi-Fi on your phone, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on your phone.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of vehicle hotspot, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on the vehicle. If Wi-Fi remains needed, turn on Wi-Fi again and try to reconnect it. (Performance may vary across systems.)
- For Android Auto compatibility, visit Google website: http://www.android.com/auto/

Trademark statement

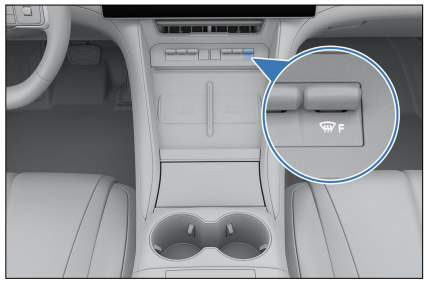
- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

A/C System

A/C Panel

Front A/C buttons:

Front windshield defroster



A/C Operation Interface



1 A/C button

12 Driver's temperature control

2 Circulation mode

3 Front windshield defroster

4 Defroster for rear windshield and side mirrors

5 Ventilator

6 Extreme cooling

7 Extreme heating

8 ION

9 Driver's temperature control

10 Front passenger's temperature control

11 Front driver's fan speed control

13 Rear row A/C settings

14 Front fan speed control

15 Synchronization

16 Driver's blow not to people/blow to people/sweep air

17 Driver's auto mode

18 Electronic A/C ON/OFF

19 Front passager's Auto mode

20 Front passager's blow not to people/blow to people/sweep air

21 A/C settings

Vents

On the infotainment touchscreen, navigate to the climate control screen and tap a vent position to open or close the corresponding vent.

The vent area is the adjustment area of A/C vents. Touch the sliding area to adjust the air outlet direction, provided that the smart wind feature is off and vent mode buttons for both the driver and front passenger are grayed out.

Front vents

- Foot-level buttons
  - Sets to direct air toward the feet of the driver or the front passenger.
- Face-level buttons
  - Lets the air sweep horizontally at the face level of the driver or the front passenger.
- Sweep buttons
  - Starts sweeping air near the vents on the driver's or the front passenger's side.

Rear vents

- Foot-level button
  - Sets to direct air toward the feet of the rear passengers.
- Face-level button
  - Lets the air sweep horizontally at the face level of the rear passengers.
- Sweep button
  - Starts sweeping air near the rear vents.

Function Definition

A/C ON/OFF button

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Auto mode button

- After tapping this button, its indicator lights up on the front A/C panel, and compressor status, fan speed

and air distribution can be adjusted automatically.

- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

Cooling

- Tap this button for cooling.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The compressor is turned on, the temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit max cooling.

Max heating

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum heating control mode. The temperature is set to "HI", the fan speed is set to the maximum, and air is directed to foot level.
- Tap this button again to exit max heating.

Front windshield defroster button

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster button for rear windshield and side mirrors

- Tap this button, and the heating panel of side mirrors will quickly clear the mirrors. The defroster is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the button.
- Tap this button again to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

REMINDER

- Using this function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

CAUTION

- Do not touch the rear window and side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button to switch to recirculation mode.
- Tap this button for the second time to switch to fresh air mode.

REMINDER

- If the "auto internal circulation upon parking" feature is enabled, the recirculation mode is automatically turned on whenever the vehicle shifts into Park, to prevent the vehicle exhaust from entering the cabin, ensuring cabin air quality.

Ventilator button

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air.

- Tap this button again to exit,

Temperature control

- Tap the upside arrow or slide it down to increase the temperature. Tap the downside arrow or slide it up to lower the temperature.
- When the temperature is set to the lowest, "Lo" is displayed. When it is set to the highest, "Hi" is displayed.

Air distribution button

- Tap an icon on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode.
- You can turn on up to three air distribution modes at a time.
- The buttons are defined as follows:

 : Air flows to the face level.

 : Air flows to the leg level.

 : Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.

Fan speed control

- Tap this button to adjust the blower speed to an appropriate level. The higher the level is, the greater the blower speed is.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open. to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked (for example, leaves or snow).
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the cooling button to reduce airflow moisture and the button lights up (the compressor is on).
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle. Condensation not blown dry

REMINDER

makes the dark and damp evaporator surface prone to mold, which is very likely to produce unpleasant odors by long-term fermentation.

- How to prevent A/C odors:
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the A/C filter regularly.
  - Try to keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- If the A/C odor prevention methods are useless, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. That is because the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator needs to be dried to prevent mold fermentation. It is normal for the A/C blower to start running automatically when you lock the vehicle. No need to worry about it.

BYD App

About BYD App

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) developed by BYD independently. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- Search for "BYD" in Google Play or App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter the email address registered with the BYD authorized dealer, tap **Send email** to receive a verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD app homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tire pressure.
2. Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.

3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to perform other settings.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management

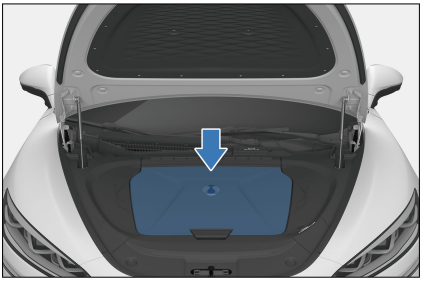
Tap **My Account** to go to the individual center.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- **Account and Security**: recovers or changes your password.
- **Settings**: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- **About Us**: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

Front Trunk

Open the hood to store luggage in the front trunk.



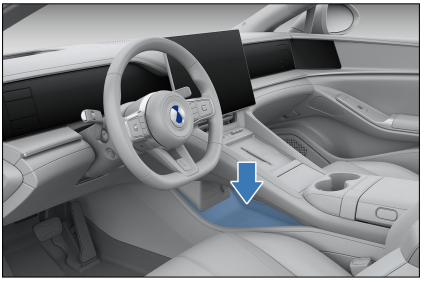
Door Bins

There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



Center Console Storage Compartment

The center console storage compartment can be used for storage of small items.



Glove Box

- Press the button to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.

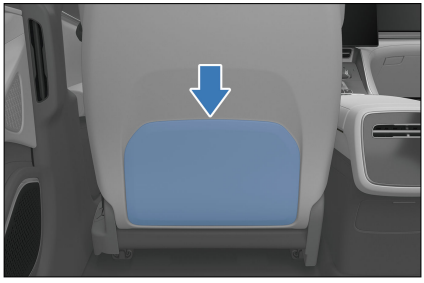


REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

Seatback Pockets

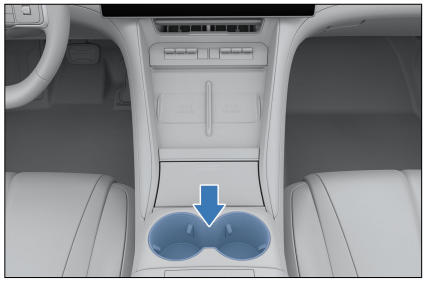
- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



Cup Holders

Front Cup Holder

- The front cup holder is located in front of the refrigerator control panel.



CAUTION

- Some cups or bottles may not fit in the holder due to their size or shape.
- Before driving, remove any cups or items from the holder that may obstruct the driver's view.

Rear Cup Holder

- The rear cup holder is located on the rear center armrest. Flip open the armrest to use the cup holder.



CAUTION

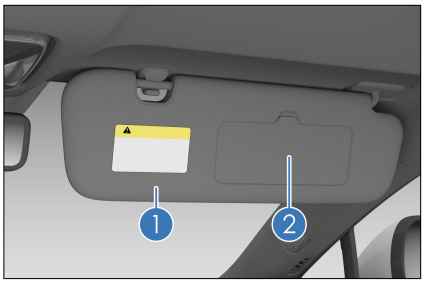
- Be cautious with hot drinks to avoid burns. Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly to prevent spills.
- Do not place an open cup or loosely capped bottle in the holder, as liquid may spill while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- Do not place glass, ceramic cups, or other hard items in the holder, which may cause injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

- Vanity mirrors are on the driver's and front passenger's sun visors.
- Flip down the sun visor and open the cover to use the mirror, and the light will turn on automatically.

Rear row vanity mirror

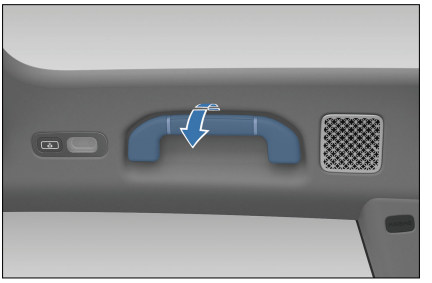
- The rear vanity mirror is located on the ceiling.
- When the rear passengers use the cosmetic mirror, they can automatically turn down by pressing the cosmetic mirror.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.



CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

USB Ports

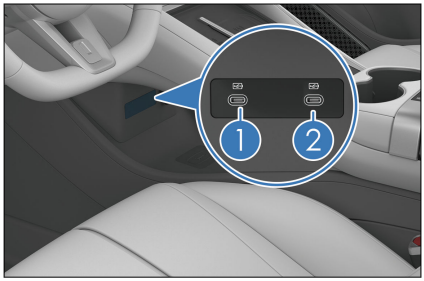
Front-Row USB Ports

- Two USB ports are provided in the lower center console.

①Type-C port (charging only)

② Type-C (data transmission)

The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

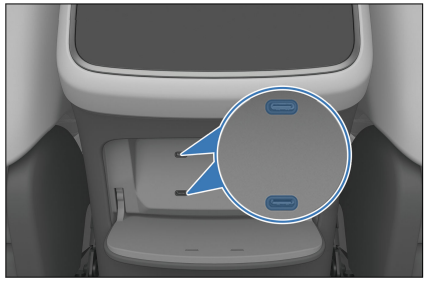


CAUTION

- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with a capacity of 8 to 128GB, formatted in FAT32, ExFAT, or NTFS.
- Do not use non-standard USB storage devices, as this may damage the infotainment system or the data stored on the USB device.

Rear-Row USB Ports

- The rear-row USB ports are located behind the front refrigerator.
  - Both are fast-charging ports (charging only).
  - The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.



Auxiliary power

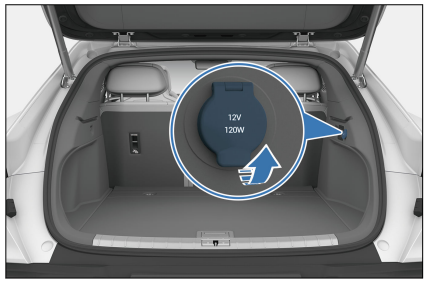
Rear-seat auxiliary power

- The front auxiliary power supply is located under the auxiliary instrument panel.



Trunk auxiliary power

- The trunk auxiliary power outlet is located on the right side of the rear seat trunk adjustment buttons.



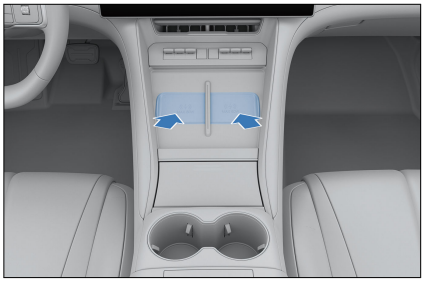
- The standby power supply can be used for accessories with a working current

of less than 10 A and electrical power of less than 120W.

- The 12V auxiliary power supplies power to vehicle accessories.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition is on. Lift the cover to use it.

Wireless Phone Charging

- The wireless charger is located on the front section of the center console. When the ignition is on, put the phone on the wireless charger's non-slip pad with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically charges and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen.



- To activate or deactivate wireless charging, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen, then tap the wireless charging icon on the shortcut menu.
- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or accidents, do not place coins or metal articles, such keys and rings, in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the wireless phone charger system does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger pad during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands, or burns will occurs.
- For better charging, the center of the phone coil must be aligned with the center of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charger area), or charging may fail.
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area, or liquid ingress from the

CAUTION

vents will cause wireless charger malfunction.

- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
- The wireless phone charger system can charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.
- To avoid burning bank cards or others with chips, do not place them between the phone and its case during charging.

REMINDER

- The wireless charger can charge up to two phones at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, remove any foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If that does not help, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and the driver's door is opened, the instrument cluster sounds an alarm and the message "Please take your cell phone with you" is displayed for five seconds.

Microphone

- The microphone is stored in the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
- For detailed instructions, refer to the user manual provided with the microphone.



Double-sided opening armrest console

The vehicle is equipped with a split-opening center armrest, which can be opened from both the driver side and the front passenger side.

Operation

- When the armrest is in the closed position, press the button on either the driver or the passenger side of the armrest to open it toward the opposite side.



CAUTION

- During opening, if the button on the opening side does not return to its original position, pressing the button on the opposite side will not open the armrest.

Recovery from misoperation

- During opening or closing of the armrest, the following misoperations may occur:

  1. When the armrest is closed but not latched, pressing the button on the opposite side may cause both sides of the armrest to open simultaneously.
  2. When only one latch is engaged during closing, pressing either side button may fail to open the armrest.
  3. When only the front latch is engaged during closing, pressing the button may cause the rear end of the armrest to lift.

  In such cases, press down on the armrest to reset the latches. Ensure the armrest is fully closed before normal operation.

Refrigerator

Refrigerator Overview

- The refrigerator is located in the center console cubby. Press the button on the side of the armrest on the driver's side or the passenger's side, and lift the refrigerator door to the other side to open it for use.



Refrigerator Operation

You can control the refrigerator through the refrigerator knob screen, central infotainment touchscreen, BYD App, and voice commands.

Refrigerator operation interface

- To access the refrigerator operation interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen → **App Center** → **Refrigerator** to set the working mode and temperature.

Refrigerator settings interface

Tap the settings button on the operation interface to enter the settings interface where you can adjust the operating mode, enable or disable power-off memory, child protection lock, and configure delayed power-off.

Refrigerator Functions

Working mode

- The refrigerator has three working modes: Off, Cooling, and Heating.
- When the refrigerator is turned off, the temperature cannot be adjusted.
- In Cooling mode, the temperature can be adjusted between -6°C and 6°C.
- In Heating mode, the temperature can be adjusted between 35°C and 50°C, and the refrigerator will maintain the temperature once the set temperature is reached.

Operating mode

- The refrigerator has two operating modes: Intelligent and Economy.
- In Intelligent Mode, the refrigerator operation links with air conditioning, windows, and other vehicle systems.
- In Economy Mode, the refrigerator prioritizes energy saving during operation.

Power-off memory

- The refrigerator's power-off memory function can be enabled or disabled through the refrigerator's settings interface or voice commands.
- Press the button to enable power-off memory (button highlighted). The refrigerator retains its previous operating state after vehicle power-off and restart.
- Press the button again to disable the function (button grayed out). After power-off, the refrigerator will remain off upon vehicle restart.

Child protection lock of refrigerator

- The refrigerator's child protection lock can be enabled or disabled through the refrigerator's settings interface or front voice commands.
- Tap to light up the button, the refrigerator control panel's control functions are disable.
- Tap again to grey out the button, the refrigerator control panel's control functions are usable.

Delayed power-off

- You can set the delayed power-off duration via the refrigerator's settings interface or voice commands, with 12 options ranging from 1 hour to 12 hours. The refrigerator continues running after vehicle shutdown until the set duration expires.
- When the battery level drops below 20%, the refrigerator will stop operating.
- If the delayed power-off function is disabled, the refrigerator does not continue after shutdown.

Refrigerator light

- The light is illuminated when the door is open.
- The light turns off when the door is closed.

Door not closed alert

- When the refrigerator is in operation and the door remains open for more than one minute, the refrigerator interface will display that "Refrigerator door is open, please close it promptly."

Heating safety reminder

- When switching from Off or Cooling to Heating, the refrigerator interface will display: "Heating enabled. Do not place items like carbonated drinks that may explode."

Dehumidification and window closure reminder

- During cooling in humid weather, the system may prompt: "High cabin humidity detected. Activate air conditioning and close windows for dehumidification."

Voice control

- You can use voice commands to open/close the refrigerator, adjust working modes, and set temperatures.
- You can also use voice commands to set delayed power-off, power-off memory, and child protection lock functions.
- Only front voice command controls the refrigerator's child protection lock.

Remote control

- You can remotely control the refrigerator's working mode and temperature settings via the BYD app.

WARNING

- Before heating, make sure that there are no flammable and explosive items, items that expand easily when heated or substances that deteriorate or volatilize easily when heated in the refrigerator like lighters, carbonated drinks, alcohol and wet wipes.
- Before enabling cooling below 0°C, confirm there are no cold-sensitive, expandable items like carbonated drinks inside the refrigerator.
- Wipe off water or stains promptly to prevent bacteria and odors.
- When driving, do not place unsealed beverage containers in the refrigerator to avoid spillage.
- With the vehicle running, make sure the refrigerator door is closed

WARNING

to prevent articles from flying out of the refrigerator.

- Avoid leaving the refrigerator door open for extended periods, especially during emergency braking or sharp turns, to prevent items from flying out and causing injury.
- Do not place fragile, perishable or smelly items in the refrigerator. If do, take away them in time.
- Do not place hot or corrosive items inside the refrigerator to prevent damage.
- Do not put sharp objects in the refrigerator, and do not scrape the inner wall with sharp objects.
- Do not rinse or immerse the refrigerator in water for cleaning.
- Turn off all power sources before cleaning. Use a slightly damp soft cloth to clean the refrigerator. Avoid using harsh chemicals like bleach or acidic cleaners, as they may corrode the refrigerator. Do not use steel wool or metal brushes, as they may scratch the surface.

REMINDER

- When the refrigerator is set to a temperature below 0°C, the cooling performance may be affected under the following conditions, as the vehicle prioritizes overall system performance:
  - The vehicle is in DC charging mode.

REMINDER

- The vehicle is driving at a high speed.
- The air conditioning is set to maximum cooling.

- The refrigerator's cooling performance is influenced by the environment. Extended door or window opening may reduce cooling efficiency. Close windows and turn on the air conditioning for optimal cooling.
- In humid weather, moisture may condense near the refrigerator after cooling is activated. Wipe it off promptly, close the windows, and turn on the air conditioning to prevent bacteria growth and unpleasant odors.
- The refrigerator consumes battery power while running. It is recommended to turn off the refrigerator when it is not needed.
- When the refrigerator is in cooling mode and the delayed power-off function is enabled, the compressor and fan will continue running until the set time.
- When the refrigerator is in cooling mode with delayed power-off enabled, the air conditioning may automatically turn on after vehicle shutdown to prevent condensation near the refrigerator in high humidity.
- The best storage temperature for frozen foods like ice cream is below -18°C. When the refrigerator is set to -6°C, it can be used for short-term storage but may not freeze already softened ice cream. It is recommended to activate the delayed power-off function or

REMINDER

remove the items before leaving the vehicle.

- The refrigerator's control panel contains electronic components, and slight heating during operation is normal.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 240
Regular Maintenance.....245
Self-Maintenance.....250

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the necessary items to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times.
- The items in the maintenance schedule are important and need to be maintained according to the time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Instructions

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, some maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Within 8 km, repeated short distances are driven and the outside temperature is below freezing.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

First maintenance:

Maintain your vehicle at 6 months or 5,000 km (HEV mileage) for the first maintenance, whichever comes first. First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.

Routine maintenance:

Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance: After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Chassis screws	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Brake pedal and EPB switch	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Drive shaft boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Ball pin and boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Front and rear wheel alignment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Tire wear	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary.
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
EPS ECU corrosion	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Foreign materials or corrosion on connections between the EPS ECU and motor	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Check the door brake and remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, apply 0.3-0.8g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Hood lock and fasteners	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Brake fluid	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, or replace as indicated by the infotainment system.
Vehicle module DTCs	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
High-voltage battery tray, impact bar, shield, crash valve, thermal insulation cotton, and mounting torque	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Fasteners of the high-voltage distribution box, DC charging distribution box, and similar parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Deformation of or oil/fluid stains on the high-voltage module	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Lamp and LED lighting	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Headlight dimming	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Initial down tilt of low beam	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
HEPA filter	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance. In case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check in time and replace the A/C filter when necessary.
PM2.5 quick tester filter*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance. In case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
	in time and replace the A/C filter when necessary.
Car fragrance bottle assembly*	Check and replace every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance. In case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check in time and replace the A/C filter when necessary.
Transmission filter cover	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Vehicle glass glue attachment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic converter	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines and connections	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Charcoal canister	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Maintenance of other items

Maintain the following items based on the time and mileage (total mileage) intervals, whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Sealing of high-voltage battery pack	Inspect every 2 years or 40,000 km and replace the breather valve if necessary.
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every 4 years or 100,000 km, or replace as indicated by the infotainment system.
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every 2 years or 40,000 km, or replace as indicated by the infotainment system.
EHS special gear oil	Check the amount of EHS gear oil during maintenance; replace the oil and the

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
	filter element assembly every 4 years or 60,000 km, or replace as indicated by the infotainment system.
Capacity test and correction	Test and calibrate capacity every 6 months or 72,000 km.

Engine Maintenance

The engine maintenance is based on the mileage or number of months, whichever comes first.The mileage refers to the HEV mileage.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine oil and oil filter	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance, or replace as indicated by the infotainment system.
Gasoline detergent	Refill every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance.
Spark plug	Replace at 42 months or 35,000 km for the first time, and every 48 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Fuel filter (integrated into the fuel pump)	Replace every 120 months or 150,000 km.
Air filter element	Replace at 18 months or 15,000 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and replace when necessary.
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance.
Engine idle speed	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance.
Charcoal canister air filter	Replace every 2 years or 30,000 km, or when frequent fuel nozzle shut-off occurs during refueling.

REMINDER

- A bottle (180 mL/bottle) of gasoline detergent should be added for the turbocharged engine each time after the first maintenance.

REMINDER

REMINDER

- Add gasoline detergent first and then fill up the fuel tank. Do not refuel or add gasoline detergent before the refueling prompt displays on the instrument cluster or the fuel indicator turns yellow.
- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every 6 months or 72,000 km) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.
- In following bad working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle. The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature <5°C) with short continuous driving time (less than 15 minutes) in HEV mode or often creeps (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

Note:

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
  - Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.
- Severe driving conditions refer to:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.
  - Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
  - Driving in cold weather.
  - Frequent and sudden braking.
  - Frequent use of a towed trailer.
  - Use as a taxi
  - Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Frequent overloading.

DiCare

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.

- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that the maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check interior vehicle.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fender liners.
  - Fender liners protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there is no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in

a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.

- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Vehicle Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on roads with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, ensure all doors, the hood, the trunk lid, the sunroof*, and the charge port are closed.
- Do not open the charge port to clean the interior.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently.

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.

- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing vehicle with high-pressure washer

- When using high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions:
  - The distance between the high-pressure water jet nozzle and the vehicle surface being cleaned should be greater than 30 cm.
  - The recommended pressure for the high-pressure water jet is less than 60 bar, and the maximum pressure is up to 100 bar.
  - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern for the high-pressure washer (do not use a direct high-pressure jet spary).
  - Keep the nozzle in constant motion during rinsing. Avoid staying stationary in one spot.
- Comply with the above instructions during washing, as failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and its components.
- Do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting and even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windshield washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated vehicle wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colors. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the service provider or check equipment instructions to understand which washing procedures are the safest for the paint finish.

CAUTION

- Disabling AVH function before using the automated wash equipment to wash the vehicle.
- Folding side mirrors before washing the vehicle. Unfolding side mirrors before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.

Carpet

- Clean carpets with a good foam detergent.
- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible. Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and the others are powders or liquids, which produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.
- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

Seat Belt Maintenance

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

WARNING

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door checks regularly. If the check lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth. Then apply 0.3 - 0.8 g of lubricant between the bracket and the pull rod riveting shaft, and between the pull rod and the sliding block.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.

CAUTION

- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new-type liquid car washer is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

WARNING

- If the motor is very hot, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cover to prevent burns.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.

WARNING

- Practice caution when handling the low-voltage battery, as it contains toxic and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Never get under a vehicle supported only by a jack. Be sure to prop the vehicle up using both a jack and a vehicle stand before going underneath the vehicle.
- Whether working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to prevent objects or liquids from falling into eyes.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the hood, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.

Self-Check

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Windshield washer fluid - Check the residual amount of washer liquid in the tank monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, check the residual amount more frequently.
- Windshield wiper: Check wiper conditions monthly. Check for wear, cracking, or other damage whenever the wiper cannot clean effectively.
- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal can be operated freely and whether the brake light switch limiting pad is aged or damaged.
- EPB switch: Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery: Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system: Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires: Check tire pressure monthly. Check for tread wear and embedded foreign bodies as well.
- Windshield defrosters: Check the defroster vent every month when the heater or the A/C system is used.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors - Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn: Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Lights

Headlight adjustment

- Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are in a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

WARNING

- The headlight bulb becomes very hot when illuminated. Grease, sweat, or scratches on the surface of the bulb glass cause the bulb to overheat and break.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Add fuel.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Put the vehicle in Park.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tires off the ground.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material" such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Sunroof Maintenance

Panoramic Glass Roof Maintenance*

- Wipe off dust or sand on the outer sealing strips of the sunroof with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Wipe off dust or sand on the molding edges of the front glass with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Clean the front of rear glass (with the front glass fully opened) frequently to avoid the accumulation of foreign materials like dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent such debris from blocking

drainage holes, which could result poor drainage of the sunroof.

- Clean the guide rails on both sides and the front flume frequently to prevent dust, sand, leaves and other debris to prevent drain holes from blockage.
- When washing the vehicle, do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

Hood

Opening the Hood

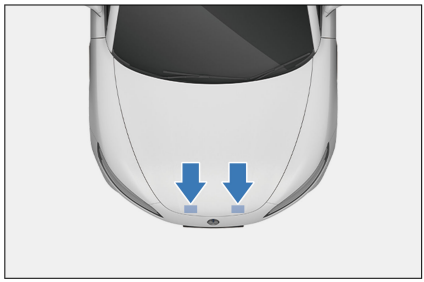
1. Shift to Park or Neutral and the EPB is engaged. Pull the hood release lever located on the left side under the dashboard twice. The hood will pop up slightly. Then lift it manually to fully open it.



2. Lifting the hood over the balance position and letting go will allow the hood to spring to the maximum angle.

Closing the Hood

1. To close the hood, lower it to a proper height and push it slightly until it partially locks. Then press slowly and evenly on the blue area as shown in the illustration with both hands to fully lock it. Keep your hands at a certain distance and do not press the ridges.
2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.



REMINDER

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the hood or release it from a high position.
- Do not close the hood with a single hand, as this may concentrate the force in one area and cause damage to the hood.
- Do not press the front edge of the hood to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Engine

Engine Maintenance Information

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle runs in EV mode for a long time, the engine may be automatically started by itself till the load of canister turns to be normal.

Engine Cylinder Cleaning

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is at a standstill, manually switch from "P" to "N" gear.
2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

Engine Oil

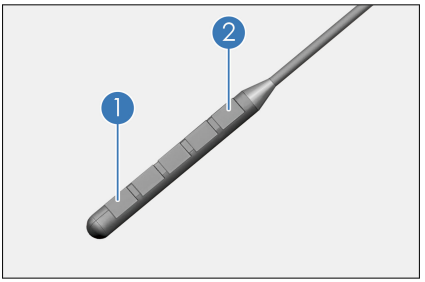
- Be sure to use the correct engine oil specification.
- Be sure to check the motor oil specifications on the packaging container when purchasing, the specifications must conform to the vehicle use.

Recommended motor oil

- Motor oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality and purified motor oil should be preferred. DENZA strongly suggests you to use the original engine oil.
- Motor oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather and road conditions. The new engine may have a higher fuel consumption rate.

Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine to the normal operating temperature, and then stop the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the right cover plate, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and condition, and check whether the level is between ① and ②. Fill or replace motor oil as required.
3. Insert the oil dipstick back



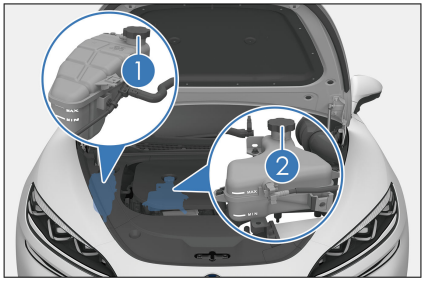
- When the low oil pressure warning lamp is on, add motor oil in time.

WARNING

- Be careful not to spill the motor oil on vehicle components.
- Oil, engine components and the exhaust system are high-temperature components that can cause burns. Be careful and wear protective garment when working in the engine compartment.
- Long-term exposure to or frequent contact with used motor oil can cause skin diseases. When this kind of oil sticks to the skin, it can be washed with soapy water and clean water.

Cooling System

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the Maximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.



- Improper coolant will damage the cooling system.
- Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
- without adding any mixture.
- Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

CAUTION

- Do not use tap water, so as to avoid cooling system damage.
- To avoid incompatible coolants and additives, do not apply additives like rust remover to the cooling system.
- Opening the coolant expansion tank when the motor has not yet fully cooled down may cause coolant to squirt out, resulting in severe burns.

Radiator and Condenser

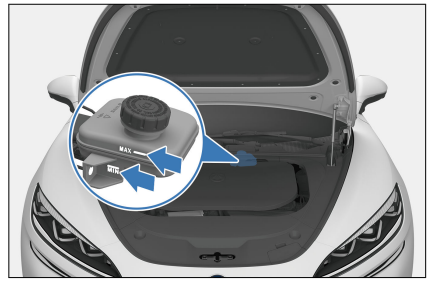
If the radiator or condenser is very dirty or if you are unsure about their condition, it is recommended to take the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- To prevent burns, do not touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot.
- To prevent damage to the radiator and condenser, do not operate them yourself.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.

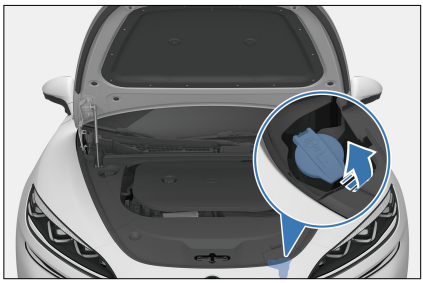


- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between Maximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.

Windshield Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.

- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.



- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.
- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washer fluid.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface. These deposits will hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on at least once a week for 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer

reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windshield wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.

- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days).
- When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet. (When there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance must be carried out timely. It is recommended to use windshield repair resin products and replace the windshield if marks are too large or too many.
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → **Settings** → **Service→Overhaul** to enable Front wiper check. The wiper is then rotated to the top.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tires

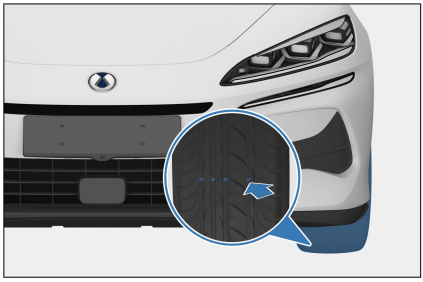
- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tire pressure, damage to and wear of tires, and the operating method for tire transposition.

WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - There are cracks on the side of the tire. Tire fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Tire treads are severely worn.



- Wear marks are cast inside tire treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- When the tread is worn to the point where the wear mark is exposed, there is serious performance loss, and the tires must be replaced.

Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tire monitoring device. When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Measure tire pressure while tires are at ambient temperatures, which means that this should be done at least three hours after vehicle travel. If driving before the measurement is absolutely necessary, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is within 1.6 km.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.

- Tubeless tires have a self-sealing function when they are punctured. However, because in fact usually there is a very slow air leak, as soon as the tire begins to depressurize, carefully look for the leak location.

Tire Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it may need to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a DENZA authorized

dealer or service provider for tire checks.

- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- Always perform tire balancing after new tire installation or tire replacement.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects while driving.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminum rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Wheel Hub Maintenance

- When the wheel hubs get dirty, use pH-neutral cleaner to remove the stains as soon as possible, then rise it.

CAUTION

- To prevent coating damage, do not:
  - Use acidic, alkaline, or abrasive cleaners.
  - Use hard brushes.
  - Steam wash or spray hot water on wheels by other means while the wheels are still hot after driving.

Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tires at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- The installation of unsuitable tires can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Replace four tires at the same time whenever possible. If this is impossible or unnecessary, replace front or rear tires at the same time. Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at DENZA authorized dealers or service providers. Please consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

Fuse Location

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading.

- The under-hood power distribution box (PDB) is located next to the left fender of the front compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard PDB is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The low-voltage battery PDB is under the rear seats and above the low-voltage battery.
- The trunk PDB is inside the trunk and can be found after the left trunk cover is removed.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.
- If a fuse blows, it is recommended to check or replace the fuse at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....262

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

The reflective vest is in the tool kit. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

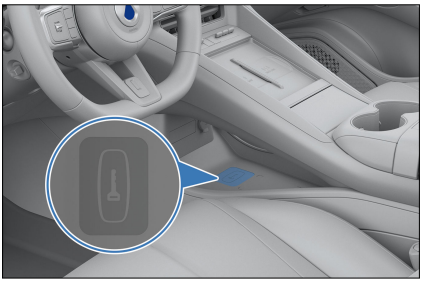
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Magnetic fields generated by nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button. The smart key warning light comes on and the speaker in the vehicle gives a beep.
3. Keep the electronic smart key close to the no-power mode sign in the center console storage compartmententer within 30 seconds after the speaker beeps. Then the speaker beeps again and the smart key warning light goes off. This means the vehicle can be started.



4. Start the vehicle within five seconds after the speaker beeps again.

If a High Voltage Fault Occurs

If a fault occurs and the instrument cluster displays "Low-voltage electrical system failure. Please park safely and contact a service center", pull over to a safe location immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for assistance.

If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on

Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct procedures (see ***P***) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. Also, check if the

spare key can start the vehicle. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. If all the keys cannot work, there may be fault in the key or smart key system, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

If the vehicle does not respond after pressing the key

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to see the response of the vehicle or the instrument cluster.
2. If there is no response from the vehicle or the instrument cluster, check whether the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
3. If the low-voltage battery has been tightened, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not turn on or are dim, the low-voltage battery is low.
4. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

If the starter motor cranks the engine at normal speed but the engine will not start:

1. Try starting the vehicle again.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts, failure of the BMS battery manager module, or failure of starting-related modules such as the generator module.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Starting the Engine After Fuel Flooding

- If the engine fails to start, repeated starting attempts may cause fuel flooding.
- If the engine becomes flooded, perform the following operations manually:

  1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is stopped, manually switch the gear from Park to Neutral.
  2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate cylinder cleaning.

- f the engine does not start after cranking for about five seconds, wait for several minutes and then try again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- If the engine fails to start repeatedly and the prompt "Engine start failed, please drive to safe area and stop to check" is displayed on the instrument cluster, do not to restart the engine, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Turn on the Hazard Warning Light.
- Try to start the engine again.

If the Engine is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, press the "P" button and ensure the EPB is engaged. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If the "high engine coolant temperature" warning light turns on, stop the engine. If there is a sound and the coolant sprays out in the engine compartment, open the engine hood after the steam disappears. If no coolant is sprayed, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the engine stops. If the fan is not working, turn off the power.

REMINDER

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for help.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the coolant expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to wait for the engine coolant to cool down to the normal range of temperature before opening the expansion tank. While the engine is running, add coolant to the upper scale mark, tighten the cap, and then start the engine for two to three cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal range, check the coolant level again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

WARNING

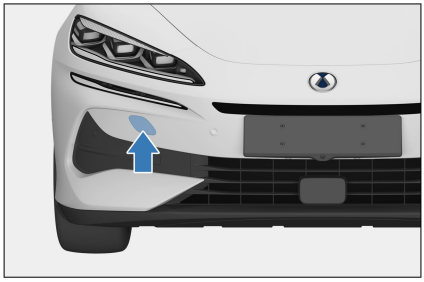
- To avoid serious injury from high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the expansion tank when the engine or radiator is still hot.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

Tow Eye

- The tow eye cover is at the right part of the front bumper, as shown in the figure.

  1. Press to open the cover.
  2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, contact a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency situations where the vehicle needs to be towed for rescue, follow the precautions below. If these precautions conflict with applicable regulations, always adhere to applicable regulations to prevent vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in Neutral gear. The towing speed must be no more than 5km/h.
  - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.
  - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
  - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
  - When the vehicle is being towed, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.
  - When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
  - The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Never rescue a stuck or high-centered vehicle with tow eyes. Call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

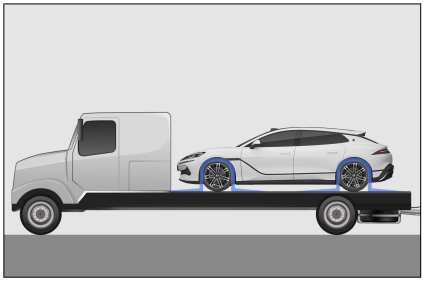
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organization you joined for roadside assistance.

CAUTION

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended towing method:

- Flatbed trailer
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed trailer is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



CAUTION

- When moving a vehicle with a flatbed trailer, make sure that the vehicle is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

If a Tire Goes Flat

In-Vehicle Tools

In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the trunk cover flap. In-vehicle tools include warning triangle, tow eye, hubcap removal tool and tire repair kit.

CAUTION

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the warning triangle

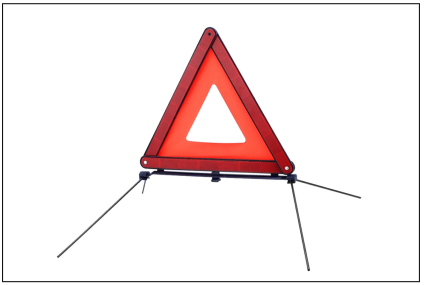
REMINDER

- When parking for repair, place the red triangle side facing oncoming vehicles, 100–200 meters away from the vehicle. If local regulations require a different distance, comply with those rules.

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Drive the vehicle off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid highway forks.
- Engage EPB and shift into Park.

- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Even a short distance of driving with a flat tire can cause irreparable damage.

08 SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Data..... 270
Other Information..... 274
Declarations of Conformity..... 276

Vehicle Data

Specifications

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	5195
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1990
Height (mm)	1490
Wheelbase (mm)	3125
Front track (mm)	1710
Rear track (mm)	1715
Front overhang (mm)	1050
Rear overhang (mm)	1020
Approach angle (°)	13
Departure angle (°)	15

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter
Curb weight (kg)	2830
Front axle load (kg)	1475
Rear axle load (kg)	1335
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	3380
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1605
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1775
Number of occupants (persons)	5

Engine

Item	Parameter
Engine model	BYD479ZQB
Engine type	In-cylinder direct injection, inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, spark-ignition, water-cooled, double overhead camshaft
Displacement (mL)	2000
Rated power of engine (kW/rpm)	127/5500
Max. net engine power (kW/rpm)	150/5500
Max. torque (N · m/rpm)	320/(2500-4000)
Emission standard	Euro 6E

Drive motor

Item	Parameter
Model	Front: TZ210XYD Left rear: TZ220XYCK Right rear: TZ220XYCK
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	Four-wheel drive
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Front: 90/6600~15000/130 Left rear: 65/4775~15000/130 Right rear: 65/4775~15000/130
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N·m)	Front: 200/20000/315 Left rear: 185/21000/360 Right rear: 185/21000/360

Economy and power performance

Item	Parameter
Maximum design speed (km/h)	260
Maximum gradeability (%)	⩾60
Fuel consumption-WLTC (L/100 km)	/

REMINDER

- Actual power consumption depends on factors such as vehicle conditions, road conditions and driving habits.

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter
Tire specification	Front: 255/45 R20 Rear: 275/45 R20
Tire pressure (kPa)	half load: 290 Full load: 290
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	＜ 10

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Configuration	Air Spring
Front camber (°)	-019+0.5/-0.5±0.5
Front toe-in (side) (°)	0.15± 0.08
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	/
Kingpin caster angle (°)	/
Rear camber (°)	-0.75±0.5
Rear toe-in (side) (°)	0.1± 0.08

Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1–5
Front brake disc thickness (mm)	30-32
Rear brake disc thickness (mm)	23-25
Front friction plate thickness (mm)	2.8-12
Rear friction plate thickness (mm)	2-6.5

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery
Rated capacity of high-voltage battery (Ah)	138.5

Seats

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats (seat cushion depth measured)	60 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	26.25° forward; 40° backward
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	25°
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seat (seat cushion depth measured)	Fixed Type
Seatback angle of rear seats (cushion depth measured)	103° forward; 6° backward
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	30° from the design position

Recommended oil type and amount

Item	Parameter
BYD479ZQA engine oil type	SP 0W-20; C5 0 W-20 meet SN +/SP specification simultaneouly
BYD479ZQA engine oil filling capacity (L)	5.4±0.1
EHS special transmission gear oil type	EHSF-2LV
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	3.1±0.05
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil	EHSF-2LV
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil amount (L)	2.6±0.1
Brake fluid type	HZY6/DOT4
Brake fluid amount (L)	1.08±0.1
Motor and motor controller coolant type	Glycol organic acid long-acting antifreeze -40°C

Item	Parameter
Motor and motor controller coolant amount (L)	11.15±0.5
Engine coolant type	Glycol organic acid long-acting antifreeze -40°C
Engine coolant amount (L)	9.5±0.5

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by DENZA. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

Other Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Positions of Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) stickers:

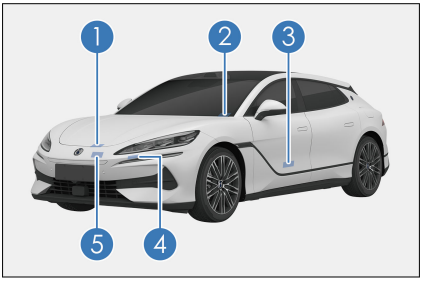
① On the inner hood panel

② On the lower left corner of the windshield

③ On the inside of front left door's inner panel

④ On the upper side of the front motor

⑤ On the front bumper beam

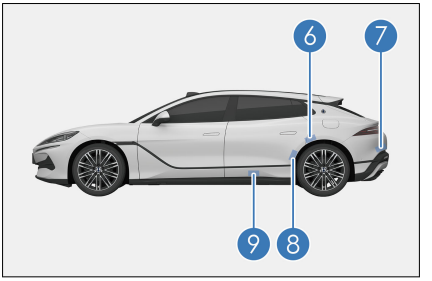


⑥ On the hubcap metal sheet of the left rear wheel

⑦ On the upper side of the inner trunk lid panel

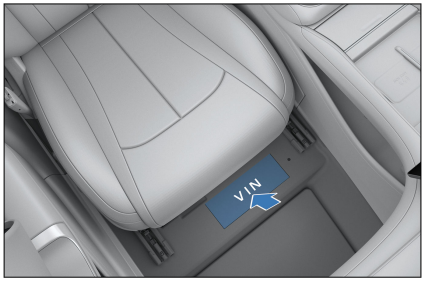
⑧ On the upper side of the rear motor

⑨ On the left rear door sill sheet metal



VIN is engraved on the beam under the front passenger's seat.

After connecting the VDS, VIN can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

The model and serial number of the engine and drive motors are located as follows:

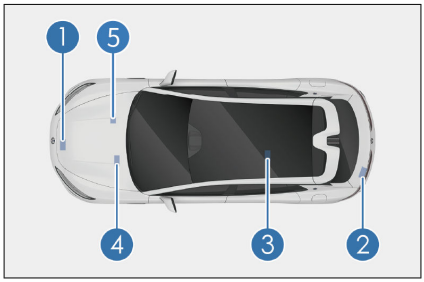
① The front drive motor model and serial number are attached to the inner panel of the hood.

② The rear drive motor model and serial number are attached to the inner panel of the trunk lid.

③ The rear drive motor model and serial number are engraved on the rear drive motor housing.

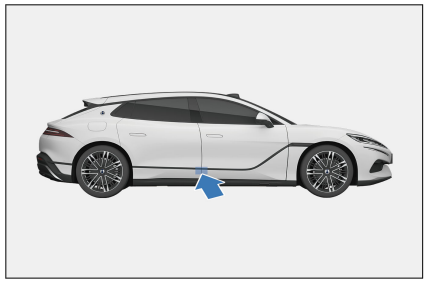
④ The front drive motor model and serial number are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

② The engine model and serial number are engraved on the engine cylinder block.



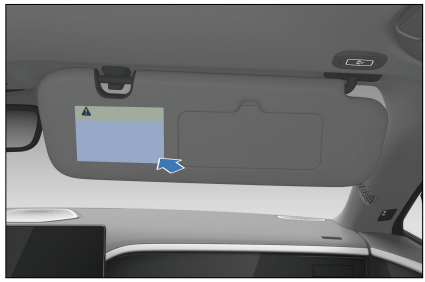
Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located on the lower part of the right B-pillar.

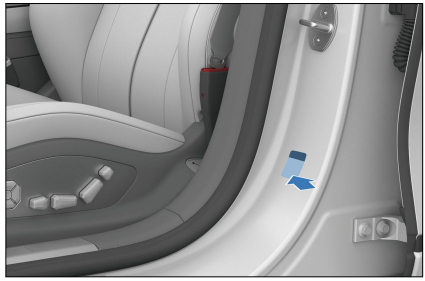


Warning Labels

The airbag warning label is printed on the right sun visor.



The tire pressure label is attached to the lower part of the left side B-pillar.



A/C system label.



The gasoline indication label is attached to the inner side of the fuel door.

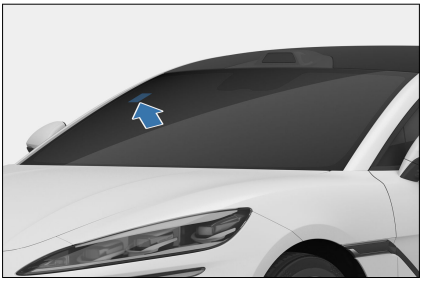


① Charging indicator label

② Charging reminder label



The vehicle energy consumption label is attached to the right side of the front windshield.



Declarations of Conformity

Radio Frequency

CE	The vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the RF Modules are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: https://cn-prod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc.

Component Name	Frequency	Maximum Power
ECALL 4G antenna	698-960MHz; 1710- 2700 MHz	26dBm
NFC device	13.56 MHz	0.06 W
Bluetooth antenna	/	20 dBm
Wi-Fi antenna	2.412–2.484 GHz 5.18 GHz–7.125 GHZ	0.02 W
FM antenna	76–108 MHz	/
DAB antenna	174–240 MHz	/
AM antenna	520–1800 KHz	/
Wireless charger module	110–150 KHz	50 W
Tire pressure monitoring transmitter module	433 MHz	0.12 W
Electronic Smart Key	434 MHz	0.01 W

Smart Key

CE	EU countries Model: HT4-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and does not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

MmWave Radars

CE	EU countries Certificate ID: 252140319AA00 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and does not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 231

A

A/C Buttons..... 223
A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches..... 249
About BYD App..... 227
Account Registration..... 227
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 205
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 151
Adjusting Front Seats..... 67
Adjusting Rear Seat with Power..... 69
Adjusting Steering Wheel with Power 76
Airbag Overview..... 15
Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions..... 19
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 31
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 140
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 248

B

Break-in Period..... 108

C

Carpet..... 249
Carrying Luggage..... 114
Charging Port Immobilizer System.... 101
Charging Precautions..... 91
Charging Safety Warnings..... 90
Child Presence Detection (CPD)... 202

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 32
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 204
Discharging..... 103
Discharging Instructions..... 102
Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 34
Door Bins..... 228
Doors and Windows..... 249
Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS)*.... 201
Driving Precautions..... 142
Driving Safety Precautions..... 110
Driving Safety Systems..... 206
Driving with Low Fuel Consumption 121

E

Electronic Child Protection Lock.... 65
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).... 137
Electronic Smart Key..... 52
Emergency Call (E-Call)*..... 85

F

Fire Prevention..... 117
Front Cup Holder..... 229
Front Interior Lights Switches..... 83
Front-Row USB Ports..... 231
Fuel Selection..... 111
Function Definitions..... 224

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 136
General Charging Troubleshooting 93
Glove Box..... 229
Grab Handles..... 230

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 86
Heating and Ventilation System..... 71

High-Voltage Battery..... 106

I

If a Tire Goes Flat..... 266
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving..... 263
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 265
Indicators and Warning Lights..... 39
Indicators/Warning Light Description 44
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 212
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 23
Intelligent Charging..... 101
Interior Cleaning..... 249
Interior Rearview Mirrors..... 77
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 27

L

Light Switches..... 80
Lights..... 251
Loading the Trunk..... 114
Locking/Unlocking the Trunk..... 61
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 57
Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key 59

M

Maintenance Plan..... 240
Maintenance Schedule..... 240
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 247

O

Opening Doors inside..... 58
Opening the Hood..... 253
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts..... 42

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 246
Phone Projection*..... 217
Power Window Switches..... 84

R

Rear-Row USB Ports..... 231
Recycling the High-Voltage Battery 107
Refueling..... 111
Regenerative Braking Intensity Settings..... 106
Regular Maintenance Precautions.... 245
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 115

S

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 113
Seat Belt Maintenance..... 249
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Precautions..... 66
Seatback Pockets..... 229
Selecting Working Mode of the Dual-Mode System..... 28
Self-Maintenance Precautions..... 250
Simple Checks..... 262
Smart Access and Start System..... 64
Smart Charging..... 100
Snow Chains..... 144
Specifications..... 270
Steering Assist Mode Settings..... 76
Sun Visor..... 230
Sunshade Switches..... 82

T

Target SOC Setting..... 104

U

Using DC Charging Piles*..... 98
Using Seat Belts..... 13

V

Vehicle Cleaning..... 247
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 246
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 274
Vehicle Storage Instructions..... 252
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 110
Vents..... 224

W

Wading into Water..... 116
Warning Labels..... 275
Wheel Hub Maintenance..... 259
Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side..... 81
Windshield Wipers and Washer..... 78
Winter Driving Precautions..... 143
Wipers..... 79
Wireless Phone Charger..... 232
Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System..... 29

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
SOC	State of Charge	AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold
FCW	Forward Collision Warning	LDA	Lane Departure Assist
LDW	Lane Departure Warning	LDP	Lane Departure Prevention
DOW	Door Open Warning	RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking
DMS	Driver Monitoring System	AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System
ABS	Antilock Braking System	ABS	Anti-lock Braking System
EBD	Electronic Brakeforce Distribution	TCS	Traction Control System
VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control	HHC	Hill Hold Control
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist	CDP	Controller Deceleration Parking
CST	Comfort Parking	ESC	Electronic Stability Controller
MAX	Maximum	MIN	Minimum
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number		



Edition date: 04.2026 EN_V1